

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

**MEWBURN ELLIS**  
INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY  
PATENTS • TRADE MARKS • DESIGNS

European Patent Office  
D-80298 München  
GERMANY

26 August 1999

Chartered Patent Agents  
European Patent Attorneys  
Registered Trade Mark Agents  
European Trade Mark Attorneys

York House  
23 Kingsway  
London WC2B 6HP

Tel 020 7240 4405  
Fax 020 7240 9339  
Fax 020 7240 0652 (G4)  
DX 149 Chancery Lane  
Website [www.mewburn.com](http://www.mewburn.com)  
E Mail [mail@mewburn.com](mailto:mail@mewburn.com)

Partners  
H.A. Gura  
D.C. Harrison  
I.M. Armitage  
H.C.E. Paget  
M.F. Ford  
T.R. Calderbank  
S.J. Linn  
G.P. Stoner  
C.J. O'Brien  
S.M. Walton  
N.J. Hackney  
S.J. Kiddle  
S.J. Hill  
A.H. Brasnett  
R.S. Grimshaw  
S.M. Kremer  
\*not CPA or EPA

Assisted by  
R.E. Body  
A.R. Brewster  
S.J. Carter  
R. Coleiro  
J.E. Cripps  
C.M. Denison  
M.G. Foster  
M.P. Freeman  
A.A. Hoyano  
J.M. Lyons  
M.M.T. Medychyl  
K.M. Nichols  
M.J. Sanderson  
L.A. Stuart  
D.A. Taylor  
T.L. Watkin  
R.J. Watson

Dear Sirs

**EUROPEAN PATENT EP-B-05257839**

(European Patent Application no. 91908963.1)

PROPRIETOR: BIOSITE DIAGNOSTICS, INC.

(former proprietor Affymax Technologies, N.V.)

TITLE: RECOMBINANT LIBRARY SCREENING METHODS

Our Ref: SMW/CG5699244

OPPOSITION is filed against the above Patent by

Cambridge Antibody Technology Limited,

whose address is: The Science Park, Melbourn, Cambridgeshire, SG8 6EJ,  
United Kingdom.

Please debit the Opposition Fee from deposit account number 2805.0013 under reference number C5501.

The Opponent has appointed as its representatives Seán M. Walton and others of Mewburn Ellis, whose address in the UK is indicated above. A list of authorised representatives is enclosed.

The Patent is opposed in its entirety. All claims are invalid and revocation of the Patent for all designated states is requested.

The Grounds of Opposition are that the subject-matter of the Patent is not patentable within the terms of Articles 52 to 57 EPC (Article 100(a) EPC) and that the Patent does not disclose the invention in a manner sufficiently clear and complete for it to be carried out by a person skilled in the art (Article 100(b) EPC).

Facts, evidence and arguments in support of these grounds are presented herein, beginning overleaf. A copy of this notice of opposition is enclosed herewith for the Proprietor.

Should the Opposition Division feel unable to agree to complete revocation of the Patent, Oral Proceedings are requested before a Decision is taken.

**FACTS, EVIDENCE AND ARGUMENT IN SUPPORT OF THE OPPOSITION OF  
CAMBRIDGE ANTIBODY TECHNOLOGY LIMITED TO EP-B-0527839 OF  
BIOSITE DIAGNOSTICS INC.**

**CONTENTS**

1	Documents on which the Opposition is Based
2	General Summary of the Opponent's Case
3	Lack of Priority Entitlement for Insufficient Disclosure of the Claimed Invention
3.1	Introductory Remarks
3.2	EPO Decided Case Law on Sufficiency of Disclosure
3.3	Consideration of Sufficiency of Disclosure by the Examination Division
3.4	The Insufficient Nature of the Disclosure of the Priority Document
4	Unpatentability (Article 100(a) EPC) - Lack of Novelty
4.1	Lack of Novelty in View of Lack of Priority Entitlement
4.2	Lack of Novelty Irrespective of Priority Entitlement
5	Unpatentability (Article 100(a) EPC) - Lack of Inventive Activity
5.1	The claimed display of a multichain protein on the surface of viruses lacked an inventive step for failure to solve any technical problem
5.2	The "concept" of the claimed invention was obvious
6	Insufficiency of Disclosure (Article 100(b) EPC)
7	Conclusion
1	<i>The Opposition is based on the following documents, two copies of which are enclosed herewith:</i>
D1	SMITH - published 1985, <i>Science</i> 228: 1315-1317
D2	RASCHED - published 1986, <i>Microbiological Reviews</i> 50: 401-427
D3	DE LA CRUZ - published 1987, <i>J. Biol. Chem.</i> 263: 4318-4322
D4	BETTER - published 1988, <i>Science</i> 240: 1041-1043
D5	PARMLEY - published 1988, <i>Gene</i> 73: 305-318
D6	WO88/06330 - GENEX, published 1988
D7	PARMLEY II - published 1989, <i>Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.</i> 251: 215-8
D8	WO90/02809 - PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION, published 22 March 1990
D9	PRIORITY DOCUMENT - for the Opposed Patent, and filed 1 May 1990
D10	MRC - EP-A-0368684, filed 13 November 1989 and published 16 May 1990
D11	CAT1 - Priority document filed 12 November 1990 for EPA 91913039.3, published 23 January 1992
D12	MCCAFFERTY - published 6 December 1990, <i>Nature</i> 348: 552-554
D13	BASS - published December 1990, <i>Proteins: Structure, Function and Genetics</i> 8: 309-314
D14	CAT2 - Priority document filed 6 March 1991 for EPA 91913039.3 published 23 January 1992
D15	WO91/17271 - AFFYMAX - publication of EPA 91908963.1, led to Opposed Patent
D16	HOOGENBOOM - published 1991, <i>Nucleic Acids Research</i> 19: 4133-4137
D17	CAT - publication of EPA 91913039.3 as WO92/01047 on 23 January 1992
D18	ROBERTS - published March 1992, <i>PNAS USA</i> 89:2429-2433
D19	GENEX LETTER - to EPO dated 18 November 1992
D20	PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION LETTER - to EPO dated 22 September 1994
D21	Applicant's letter to EPO dated 14 February 1996 in the present case
D22	KLUG DECLARATION - Professor Sir Aaron Klug, PhD

## 2 General Summary of the Opponent's Case

2.1 The Patentee seeks to claim the benefit of a filing date of 1 May 1991 and a priority date of 1 May 1990.

2.2 The disclosure in the Opposed Patent and the Priority Document (D9) made no technical contribution to the state of the art.

2.3 At the time of filing there was a teaching in the art against it being possible to display large inserts and protein domains on the surface of organisms such as filamentous bacteriophage, as indeed was argued by the Applicant during prosecution. Against this background, the Applicant asserted that it would be possible to display multichain proteins and drafted a specification containing no experimental results but a hypothetical experimental "example" alleged to lead the skilled person to success.

2.4 The claims were allowed by the Examining Division (ED) in the belief that the specification contains experimental evidence overturning the prejudice of the ordinary skilled person. The ED relied on an explicit statements from the Applicant on page 3 of its letter of 14 February 1996 (herewith D21) that:

*"The specification provides both general guidelines and detailed exemplification of the concept."*

and Example 1 provides details for all necessary steps.

2.5 However, as is explained below, even the narrowest embodiment described hypothetically in Example 1 of the Patent and priority document is not operable. It would have represented an undue burden of experimentation for the ordinary person skilled in the art to have identified flaws in the protocol and made all modifications required to the described approach in order to achieve success.

2.6 Even a relatively small amount of experimentation would have been undue in the present case because of the state of the art teaching against it being possible to display inserts, especially proteinaceous binding domains, of over about 100 amino acids on filamentous phage. The ordinary skilled person would have been sceptical of the mere assertions made in the specification, unsupported by any experimental results, and failure to achieve success as described in Example 1 would have been consistent with his expectations. He would have had no motivation to undertake a major research effort to seek success by modifying the described procedure, because he would not have expected success to be possible at all.

2.7 In prosecution, the Applicant stated (letter of 14 February 1996, page 3, D21)

*"it was unexpected that a multichain protein could assemble on the surface of a phage both such that the phage remains viable and permitting the protein to be screened as a result of assuming conformation permitting binding to a known ligand."*

2.8 The Applicant furthermore referred to a number of "obviously justifiable concerns" relating to problems anticipated for any attempt to display a large insert on a filamentous phage; and the specific warning of D5 (PARMLEY). See page 4 of the letter of 14 February 1996.

- 2.9 Problems expected by the ordinary skilled person prior to the filing remained problems expected by the ordinary skilled person, based on "OBVIOUSLY JUSTIFIABLE CONCERN", since they were not overcome by the teaching provided by the Applicant. The ordinary skilled person would still have been led to failure - in keeping with his expectations.
- 2.10 Overall, the Patent is invalid for insufficiency of disclosure of and lack of support for the claimed subject-matter, and also lacks inventive activity in accordance with the principles discussed in T694/92 (MYCOGEN). MYCOGEN and other decisions of EPO Technical Boards of Appeal have made it clear that a claim scope must be commensurate with the contribution made to the art. There must be sufficient disclosure of and support for the subject-matter of the claims across their whole breadth.
- 2.11 The lack of sufficient disclosure in the priority document - which contains nothing to change the expectations of the skilled person at the time - leads to a lack of priority entitlement for all claims.
- 2.12 This leads to a lack of novelty under Article 54(3) EPC of most if not all claims over experimental work performed by the present Opponent and provided with additional discussion in priority documents D11 and D14 filed 12 November 1990 and 6 March 1991, respectively. Priority from these documents was claimed by the European patent application 91913039.3 published on 23 January 1992 as WO92/01047 (D15).
- 2.13 As a "concept" at least claim 1 can be said to lack novelty over D10 (MRC) under Article 54(3) EPC, irrespective of priority entitlement. Other claims lack inventive activity over this document in view of their lack of priority entitlement and the failure of the alleged inventors to provide an enabling disclosure.
- 2.14 All claims lack inventive activity, irrespective of priority entitlement, over D1 (SMITH), D3 (DE LA CRUZ), D5 (PARMLEY) and D7 (PARMLEY II), D6 (GENEX), and D8 (PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION. D1 (SMITH) was considered during prosecution, but the arguments employed by the Applicant to persuade the Examining Division of the presence of inventive activity relied wholly on the specification being supposed to provide experimental results and an enabling disclosure overturning the expectations of the skilled person at the time. Given the lack of sufficient disclosure of the claimed subject-matter, the skilled person would still have believed display of functional multichain proteins such as antibody Fab's on the surface of bacteriophage such as filamentous bacteriophage not to be possible, even though desirable. The claimed invention involved no inventive activity. The other documents were not considered during prosecution.



### 3 *Lack of Priority Entitlement for Insufficient Disclosure of the Claimed Invention*

#### 3.1 *Introductory Remarks*

3.1.1 It is well-established that for there to be priority entitlement the relevant priority document must contain an enabling disclosure of the claimed subject-matter, that is to say the priority document must disclose the claimed invention in a manner sufficiently clear and complete for it to be carried out by a person skilled in the art. (See for example EPO Board of Appeal Decisions T206/83 and T81/87.)

3.1.2 The principles established for consideration of sufficiency of disclosure in a patent specification apply equally to the priority document. The following discussion is therefore applied both in respect of the lack of priority entitlement of the claims of the Opposed Patent, and invalidity of the Opposed Patent for insufficiency of disclosure (see Section 6 below).

3.1.3 The European patent application as filed and published differed from the priority document at least by addition of the passage from page 9, middle of line 9, to page 10, line 10, of the application as published. See D15 herewith. This passage added reference to the MCCAFFERTY and BASS papers cited herein as D12 and D13, demonstrating display on filamentous bacteriophage of large protein domains, including scFv antibody molecules in which Ig VH and VL domains associate to provide an antigen binding site. Information on successful display of such large protein domains in functional form was not available at the claimed priority date.

#### 3.2 *EPO Decided Case Law on Sufficiency of Disclosure*

3.2.1 A number of Decisions of EPO Technical Boards of Appeal explain that Article 83 EPC requires information to be given in the application as filed:

*"which would lead the skilled person necessarily and directly towards success across the whole scope of the claim".*

For example, in T435/91, under 2.2.1 of the Reasons for the Decision, it is stated:

*"In the Board's judgment the criteria for determining the sufficiency of the disclosure are the same for all inventions, irrespective of the way in which they are defined, be it by way of structural terms of their technical features or by their function. In both cases, the requirement of sufficient disclosure can only mean that the whole subject-matter that is defined in the claims, and not only part of it, must be capable of being carried out by the skilled person without the burden of an undue amount of experimentation or the application of inventive ingenuity."*

3.2.2 The Decision in another case, T409/91, is summed up in its headnote thus:

*"The questions of sufficiency and of support by the description are questions of fact which have to be answered on the basis of the available evidence having regard to the balance of probabilities in each individual case. Although the requirements of sufficient disclosure of the invention (Art. 83 EPC) and support by the description (Art. 84 EPC) are related to different parts of the patent application, they give effect to the same legal principle that the patent monopoly should be justified by the technical contribution to the art" (emphasis added).*

Under 3.3 of the Reasons for the Decision, T409/91 quotes with approval a much earlier Decision T26/81 which stated:

*"the claims should not extend to subject-matter which, after reading the description, would still not be at the disposal of the person skilled in the art".*

- 3.2.3 Thus, there is a legal requirement for a European patent specification to provide justification for the award of an exclusive patent right by way of enabling disclosure commensurate with the breadth of protection accorded by the patent. The Patentee must have provided a *technical contribution to the art* in order for the granting of a patent to be warranted, and the value of the patent, as measured by its scope, must be commensurate with the contribution made.
- 3.2.4 T694/92 (MYCOGEN) has been hailed as a landmark decision in the clarity of explanation of the inter-play between Articles 83, 84 and 56.
- 3.2.5 The Decision states (Reason 3):
- "... a proper balance must be found between, on the one hand, the actual technical contribution to the state of the art by the invention disclosed in said patent or patent application, if any, and, on the other hand, the manner of claiming so that, if patent protection is granted, its scope is fair and adequate."* [emphases in the actual decision]
- 3.2.6 The Board then consider each of Articles 84, 83 and 56 in turn, noting with respect to Article 84:
- "...questions of clarity or support may affect the decision on issues under Article 100 EPC, such as novelty (Article 54 EPC), inventive step (Article 56 EPC) or sufficiency of disclosure (Article 83 EPC)."*
- and with respect to Article 83:
- "...the extent to which an invention is sufficiently disclosed is highly relevant when considering the issue of support within the meaning of Article 84 EPC, because both these requirements reflect the same general principle, namely that the scope of a granted patent should correspond to its technical contribution to the state of the art."*
- 3.2.7 Further in respect of Article 83 the Board stated:
- "... more technical details and more than one example may be necessary in order to support claims of a broad scope, for example where the achievement of a given technical effect by known techniques in different areas of application constitutes the essence of the invention and serious doubts exist as to whether the said effect can readily be obtained for the whole range of applications claimed."*
- 3.2.8 As to Article 56, the Board stated:
- "If the non-obviousness of a claimed invention is based on a given technical effect, the latter should, in principle, be achievable over the whole area claimed."*
- 3.2.9 This is consistent with a finding of lack of inventive step in T939/92 where the effect alleged to provide inventive step was not credible for all claimed alternatives.

- 3.2.10 The fundamental in all this is that since any patent has a potentially restrictive effect on the public, a patent is only ever justified in return for the applicant having made a tangible technical contribution to the art, and the breadth of patent awarded must be commensurate with what has actually been provided.

### 3.3 *Consideration of Sufficiency of Disclosure by the Examination Division*

- 3.3.1 During prosecution, the Examining Division (ED) did not specifically consider sufficiency of disclosure in the priority document because, unlike in the present Opposition, intervening prior art was not cited.
- 3.3.2 The ED did comment on sufficiency of disclosure of what was claim 1 at the time of the first examination report dated 6 June 1995. That claim required the presence of a "tag" and the ED noted that "The only example given in the application describes a method in which no tag protein and no tag ligand protein are used, i.e. the method of claim 8." That claim was cancelled by the Applicant and the present claims, not requiring the presence of a tag, formed basis for further prosecution and grant.
- 3.3.3 The ED did not appreciate that the "example" given in the application is hypothetical, being written in the present tense and including no relevant experimental data. The claimed invention relates to display of multichain proteins such as antibodies that are large molecules, requiring proper folding and proper association between chains in order to function and be selectable by binding to a ligand.
- 3.3.4 The ED was further not in a position to appreciate that the hypothetical example contains a variety of technical flaws that mean that an ordinary skilled person seeking to follow the protocol would not have succeeded in displaying any functional multichain protein on the surface of a bacteriophage as claimed.
- 3.3.5 This is discussed in detail below with reference to the KLUG DECLARATION (D22).
- 3.3.6 The Patentee may seek to argue that the changes which it can now be seen are required to be made in order to make Example 1 work would have been obvious to the skilled person based on the disclosure, but clearly they were not obvious to the named inventors when the application was actually filed.

### 3.4 *The Insufficient Nature of the Disclosure of the Priority Document (D9)*

- 3.4.1 Generally, what is considered an "undue burden of experimentation" depends on the state of mind of the person skilled in the art and what the specification provides to change his expectations
- 3.4.2 It is important to recognise that the sufficiency of disclosure and the inter-related issue of support for the claims must be assessed with reference to the expectations of the person skilled in the art at the claimed priority date. His state of mind, or "mind-set", is important with regard to what can be considered "undue burden of experimentation" in trying to achieve particular experimental goals. As will be discussed, and as is in fact the Patentee's position as stated during prosecution, even for the display on the surface of proteinaceous binding domains on the surface of viruses, indeed one kind of virus - filamentous bacteriophages, there was in the art at the time strong teaching against expecting that this should be possible at all - a

prejudice.

- 3.4.3 The Priority Document does not contain any teaching relevant to what is claimed that would have been of any substance or use to a skilled person at the relevant date, and no relevant experimental results. The absence of experimental results would have led the ordinary skilled person to regard the disclosure with real scepticism, bearing in mind the prejudice. He would have had no reason to believe from the specification that he should disregard his knowledge of the art and accept the contrary mere assertions of the specification.
- 3.4.4 Moreover, this is compounded by the fact that should the ordinary skilled person have overcome his scepticism to the extent of being prepared to try to follow the hypothetical Example 1, he would have been led to failure. The reasons for such failure can be seen now, because by virtue of the later work of others it is now known that contrary to expectations it is possible to display multichain protein domains on the surface of viruses such as filamentous bacteriophage. However, at the claimed priority date the skilled person (with prior art expectation of failure) would not have known why he failed with the hypothetical protocols asserted to work. He would have concluded, could only have concluded on the basis of information available to him, that his expectation of failure was correct.
- 3.4.5 The point cannot be over-emphasized that the state of mind of the person skilled in the art is crucial in assessing what is and is not undue burden of experimentation. Given the expectation of failure taught by the art as characterised by the Patentee, even a relatively small amount of experimentation would have been excessive.
- 3.4.6 The Patent contains insufficient disclosure of display on the surface of viruses, especially filamentous bacteriophage.
- 3.4.7 As noted, it is important to consider the twin issues of sufficiency and support against the background of the state of the art at the time. The Opponent largely agrees with the assessment of the state of the art made by the Applicant during prosecution, in terms of the teaching against possibilities for protein display on viruses such as filamentous phage. (Note the Opponent does not agree with the Applicant's proposition that the invention as claimed involves inventive activity.)
- 3.4.8 In its submission of 14 February 1996 (D21), the Applicant stated (page 3:
- "it was unexpected that a multichain protein could assemble on the surface of a phage both such that the phage remains viable and permitting the protein to be screened as a result of assuming conformation permitting binding to a known ligand."*
- 3.4.9 That is true.
- 3.4.10 Furthermore, on page 6, the Applicant pointed out that "D2" (now D5 - PARMLEY):
- "specifically warns against display of large single-chain peptides ...[and]... recommends (page 315) that the largest size of fragment for display on a filamentous phage should be 100-300 bp (corresponding to 33-100 amino acids)."*
- 3.4.11 Continuing, the Applicant referred to "an obviously justifiable concern" - AN OBVIOUSLY JUSTIFIABLE CONCERN - relating to ability of phage to display,

and noted other potential problems.

3.4.12 These statements of the expectations of the ordinary skilled person at the time are consistent with statements made by other, independent parties on the same subject.

3.4.13 The Applicant in the present case itself referred in the same letter to Bass et al. (D13) (published by scientists at Genentech, Inc.), who said:

*"There are, however, several important limitations in using such fusion phage ... [I]t has been shown that fusion phage are useful only for displaying proteins of less than 100 and preferably less than 50 residues, because large inserts presumably disrupt the function of gene III, and therefore phage assembly and infectivity." [citing D4, PARMLEY]*

3.4.14 An unrelated applicant for D6 (GENEX) stated in its prosecution in relation to ability to display the antibody molecule it calls a "SCAD" (in which Ig VH and Ig VL domain are supposed to associate as they do in antibodies and Fab's to provide an antigen binding site):

*"it was not apparent at this time that the binding capabilities of a SCAD ["single chain antibody domain"] would be maintained after its expression on the surface of a virus. It was this doubt that existed concerning whether the expressed SCAD would still be functional that would not have led a person skilled in the art to prepare the organisms as claimed. [from the prosecution of D6 (GENEX) - letter of 18 November 1992, filed herewith as D19]*

3.4.15 Another party, the applicant for D8 (PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION) stated in its prosecution:

*"Smith's 57 residue EcoRI fragment likewise does not qualify as a "proteinaceous binding domains", for the reasons discussed in the Ladner Declaration. Nor would it be obvious to substitute a longer insert for the fragment in question, as even with just a 57 residue insert, the phage were "partially defective in infectivity" (page 1315, 3d col.). Smith comments, "it is unlikely that fusion phage will accommodate inserts as large as the average coding sequence". (page 1316, 3d col.). Bass, et al. ... states that Smith's method is suitable for "display of small protein fragments (10-50 amino acids)" and that "it has been shown that fusion phage are useful only for displaying proteins of less than 100 and preferably less than 50 residues, because large inserts presumably disrupt the function of gene III and therefore phage assembly and infectivity."*

....

*Smith did not advocate display of entire foreign proteins on is phage, indeed, he chose to fragment EcoRI rather than insert it, intact, into the gIII protein. Based on his experience with the fragment, he warned against use of large inserts, and therefore discouraged a person of ordinary skill from attempting to display foreign proteins on the surface of the phage."*

[from the prosecution of D8 (PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION) - letter of 22 September 1994 (page 3), filed herewith as D20]

- 3.4.16 Thus, there was a well-recognised teaching in the art that display of proteins, particularly of greater than 100 amino acids, would not work.
- 3.4.17 This is additional to the absence of evidence that a protein domain would be able to fold into a functional, binding form on the surface of a bacteriophage.
- 3.4.18 There were further issues surrounding ability of chain components of a multi-chain protein to assemble correctly on the surface of bacteriophage.
- 3.4.19 Against this background, the specification merely asserts that display of large multichain proteins such as Fab's will work. As noted, the ordinary person skilled in the art would have been highly sceptical, given the complete absence of experimental results in the application. Reading the Patent specification at the filing date or claimed priority date would not have changed the skilled person's expectations.
- 3.4.20 The disclosure in the specification of the Patent did not make any contribution to the art which would have changed the expectations of the ordinary skilled person. This is discussed herein with particular reference to the KLUG DECLARATION filed herewith.
- 3.4.21 There was a prejudice in the art against the display of large, folded domains, the relevant alleged experiments in the Patent are prophetic and the document does not provide an enabling disclosure. A person skilled in the art who at the priority date followed the procedures taught by the Patent would have failed to obtain folded and functional antibody domains or other multichain proteins displayed on the surface of any virus (e.g. filamentous bacteriophage) because of serious errors in the teaching (identified in detail in the KLUG DECLARATION). This failure would have been as expected. Faced with failure in confirmation of his expectations, the person skilled in the art would have had no motivation at all to look into the experimental details proposed by the Patent to determine the nature of the errors and how they might be corrected. Indeed, he would have had no reason to assume there were errors there at all - given his expectation of failure based on the prior teaching in the art against display of large polypeptides. It is only now, following work by scientists of the present Opponent who showed experimentally that large folded domains such as single-chain Fv antibody molecules can be displayed on the surface of secreted bacteriophage and moreover that multichain proteins such as antibody Fab fragments can also be displayed, that there is motivation to go back and analyse the Priority Document D9 (and Patent) in detail to see the errors. See the following documents for this experimental work: D12 - MCCAFFERTY - showing display of scFv antibody molecules, D17 - CAT - showing display of scFv antibody molecules and other proteins, including various multichain proteins: Fab's in Examples 7, 25, 26, 27, 33, 40, and 41, the enzyme alkaline phosphatase, which requires dimerisation to function, in Examples 11, 12, 30, 31 and 32, Fv antibody molecules in Example 39, (and priority documents (D11, especially Examples 7, 13 and 14, D14, especially Examples 7, 13 and 14), and D16 - HOOGENBOOM).
- 3.4.22 D18 (ROBERTS) provides independent evidence of recognition of the present Opponent's work being responsible for overcoming the prejudices in the art and demonstrating for the first time that it is possible to display large protein domains in a functional, folded form on the surface of bacteriophage, stating:

*"A single-chain antibody (~250 amino acids) (7) and human growth hormone (191 amino acids) (9) have been displayed on*

*the surface of phage as gene III fusion proteins. Thus, there does not seem to be a serious limitation on the size of displayed proteins."* [emphasis added; (7) is D12 MCCAFFERTY and (9) is D13 BASS]

- 3.4.23 As of its date, the Priority Document D9 (and Patent) is fatally flawed, failing to provide an enabling disclosure for the ordinary skilled person to display large folded domains and multichain proteins on the surface of any virus and certainly any filamentous bacteriophage.
- 3.4.24 If the hypothetical methodology were to be followed, a functional phage antibody fusion display would not be generated. Looking at Example 1 in detail, it has flaws in three areas - construction of the vectors, construction of the antibody phage display library and selection of antigen binding phage antibodies - any one of which would be fatal to operability.
- 3.4.25 These points are explained in detail by Sir Aaron Klug in the KLUG DECLARATION, D22. Rather than recite portions of that document here, the OD is requested to read and consider it in detail. However, the main points are as follows.
- 3.4.26 Construction of vectors

The construction of the vector fdTetSXNS leads to a vector with several flaws: an amber stop codon is incorporated into the signal sequence of gene III; the signal recognition sequence is missing for cleavage of the leader sequence from mature gene III protein and there is a -1 frameshift which makes gene III out-of-frame. Each and every one of these defects in the vector fdTetSXNS would, if not corrected during the construction of the antibody library, prevent generation of viable phage displaying Fab fragments.

3.4.27 Construction of antibody library

The construction of the heavy chain gene antibody library by fusion at the 5' end of gene III is described in the Priority Document (and Patent) as being "in the manner described by Huse et al". No suggestion is made of any need to correct the stop codon in the gene III leader sequence or the lack of a signal cleavage sequence, nor procedures to do this. There is no correction for the frameshift in the vector during the construction of the antibody library, correction which would require complex experimentation. Anyone following the teaching of the Priority Document (and Patent) would not succeed in producing antibody fragments displayed on phage. Furthermore, defects in the methods described for construction of the light chain library would prevent the formation of the combined heavy-light chain expression library and hence the display of Fab fragments.

3.4.28 Selection of phage displaying antibody binding to specific antigen

The Priority Document (and Patent) also fails at the later step of the selection of phage antibody by binding to specific antigen. The description of affinity purification of phage in the example from the foot of page 26 (page 8 of the Patent) is at best unclear. It describes binding of phage expressing antibody to a purified antibody and then selecting phage antibodies which bind to the purified antibody using a biotinylated anti-mouse IgG followed by streptavidin. This method would only apply to isolating phage antibodies which recognise or are recognised by other antibodies. This does not rely on or demonstrate functional expression of an

antibody or member of a binding pair in the selection process. Further, the method used an anti-mouse IgG to bind to a purified antibody which is in turn bound to a phage antibody specific for it. However, one would expect the anti-mouse IgG to bind to any phage in the library expressing a Fab fragment rather than to select one which has the desired specificity. The Priority Document (and Patent) provides no evidence of creation of an antibody library displayed on phage nor any ability to isolate antibodies which bind particular antigens from that library.

- 3.4.29 Despite the lack of evidence in all areas, the Priority Document says, on page 2, lines 12-14, (and the Patent says on page 2, at line 32):

*"Quite surprisingly, the present invention fulfills these and other related needs."*

- 3.4.30 The Opponent agrees that the display of functional antibody fragments on the surface of bacteriophage was surprising in view of the prior art, including the teaching away. However, it is clear that the disclosure in the Priority Document and Patent provides nothing to change the state of the art. *Nothing* is contributed to change the expectation of success; no enabling disclosure is provided.

- 3.4.31 It was only in view of the concrete experimental evidence provided by the present Opponent and published in documents cited herein that the prior art teaching and expectation of failure was overturned. For instance, as discussed below D11, filed on 12 November 1990 and serving as a priority document for EPA 91913039.3 published on 23 January 1992 as WO92/01047 (D17), contains the first experimental demonstration of display of functional antibody Fab molecules able to bind antigen (see especially Example 7 on pages 31-33). D11 also contains experimental demonstration of display of a non-antibody multichain protein, namely the enzyme alkaline phosphatase which functions only as a homodimer. See Examples 13 and 14 on pages 39-41. D12 - MCCAFFERTY - was the first publication showing that it is possible to display large, folded protein domains such as antibody molecules on the surface of viruses (specifically filamentous bacteriophage), and D16 - HOOGENBOOM - further published the results of experiments demonstrating functional display of Fab's on viruses (again filamentous bacteriophage). Only in view of this proof that success is possible can someone with specialist knowledge return to the disclosure of D9, the present priority document (and the Opposed Patent), and see where they went wrong (as discussed above). Fundamentally, however, the person skilled in the art reading the Priority Document D9 at the claimed priority date or the Patent specification at its deemed filing date would still have expected failure, because no results are provided to prove that success can be achieved in spite of the prior art expectation. Furthermore, if he had summoned enough motivation to try the proposed protocol, he still would have failed, because the paper, proposed protocol is flawed, in so many ways as to be unworkable, certainly unworkable without undue burden or inventive activity.

- 3.4.32 Summarising the insufficiency of disclosure leading to lack of priority entitlement:

(i) There was no evidence of the ability of viruses including bacteriophage to display a folded binding domain.

(ii) The state of the art indicated that any large inserts over about 100 amino acids, whether proteinaceous or not, would not work, something well recognised by interested parties.

(iii) The Applicant itself further noted "OBVIOUSLY JUSTIFIABLE



CONCERNS" facing the skilled person.

(iv) The specification asserted that display of any multichain protein domain, including over 100 amino acids, would work, but provided no experimental demonstration.

(v) The only hypothetical protocol (proposing display of Fab's) provided is deeply flawed.

(vi) A skilled person attempting to follow the protocol at the time would have failed to achieve display of Fab's on the surface of phage particles.

(vii) This would have been consistent with the skilled person's expectations and they would have had no motivation to look for "correctable" errors in the protocol.

(viii) For the ordinary skilled person to have looked for errors, found them all and corrected them all, and eventually to have achieved what is now known to be possible, in view of experimental work of others (e.g. as disclosed in D11, D12, D13, D14, D16 and D17) but thought at the time not to be possible, would have represented an undue burden of experimentation.

(ix) Both the priority document and the patent specification fail to disclose the claimed invention in a manner sufficiently clear and complete for it to be carried out by a person skilled in the art.

(x) The claims are directed to subject-matter which, after reading the description, was still not at the disposal of the person skilled in the art.

#### 4 *Unpatentability - Article 100(a) EPC (Articles 52 to 57) - Lack of Novelty*

##### 4.1 Lack of Novelty in View of Lack of Priority Entitlement

4.1.1 *At least claims 1-5 and 8-12 lack novelty over D11 and D14, priority documents for EPA 91913039.3 published as WO92/01047*

4.1.2 Example 7 describe experiments in which Fab molecules were successfully displayed on filamentous bacteriophage. Examples 13 and 14 describe experiments in which a further multichain protein, the enzyme alkaline phosphatase, was displayed on filamentous bacteriophage and confirmed by its enzymatic activity to be in a functional, dimerised form. These examples appear in D17, the publication of EPA 91913039.3 as Examples 7, 11 and 12.

4.1.3 This disclosure clearly destroys the novelty of claim 1.

4.1.4 Certainly if "optional" and "if desired" steps in claim 2 are ignored, the disclosure in these experimental examples also destroys the novelty of claim 2, it not being clear that the reference to the method being "for screening a DNA library" has any limitation in the claim, given the reference in steps (i) and (ii) to only first and second "nucleotide sequence members of the library" encoding first and second chains of one multichain protein. Selection "by means of the ligand" is shown in Example 7 by binding to lysozyme and in Examples 14 and 15 by enzymatic activity.

4.1.5 In any case, further discussion of the use of filamentous bacteriophage to display proteins including multichain proteins appears in D11 on page 6 (use of bacteriophage displaying VH/VL pairs for screening libraries), and especially pages 10-11: see the statement of invention beginning at page 10, line 9, and the subsequent steps, including screening for binding (lines 19-20), recovering packages (lines 22-23) and isolating the nucleotide sequence encoding the binding molecule (lines 23-29). Lines 30-34 of page 10 indicate that the binding molecule may be a fragment or derivative of an antibody and may be an enzyme. As noted the experimental exemplification includes multichain Fab fragments of antibodies and the multichain enzyme alkaline phosphatase. Pages 1-2 discuss antibody fragments known to bind antigen, including the multichain fragments Fv and Fab. See also pages 16-17 for discussion and explanation of screening.

4.1.6 The passage beginning at line 35 of page 10 indicates the relevant virus may be a filamentous bacteriophage, as indeed is specifically exemplified, so claim 3 further lacks novelty.

4.1.7 The same passage refers to fd, and page 12 (line 32) to f1, fd and M13, so claim 4 lacks novelty. Note that phages M13, fd and F1 are extremely similar are for current purposes wholly equivalent. D2 (RASCHED) states (first column):

*"They resemble each other so closely that it is legitimate to consider them as slight mutations of basically the same phage. Except for a small number of changes their DNA sequences are identical."*

This is reinforced by the fact that the amino acid sequences of gene III protein are identical for fd, F1 and M13 and the DNA sequences have just a few silent base changes.

- 4.1.8 Claim 4 therefore lacks novelty.
- 4.1.9 The experimental examples employ the pIII coat protein and this is discussed on pages 10-11, so claim 5 also lacks novelty.
- 4.1.10 As noted already, Example 7 describes display of Fab antibody fragments and Fv antibody fragments are also mentioned as further multichain antibody fragments for display on bacteriophage. Claim 9 therefore lacks novelty.
- 4.1.11 Both Fv molecules and Fab molecules include an antibody heavy chain variable region (see e.g. pages 1-2), so claim 10 lacks novelty. The "optional" element of claim 10 also lacks novelty over the indication on page 11, at lines 3-4, that "the sequence may be inserted after the signal sequence of gene III".
- 4.1.12 The paragraph bridging pages 3-4 of D11 explain that libraries of antibody heavy and light chains may be provided by means of amplification - see e.g. line 9 onwards. Claim 11 lacks novelty. See also line 2 of page 17, and lines 15-19 of the same page.
- 4.1.13 Claim 12 also lacks novelty. Pages 2-3 of D11 make it clear that the aim of the screening process is to identify antibodies or other multichain proteins for inclusion in therapeutic compositions (see e.g. page 2, line 25, and page 3, line 33) and diagnostic contexts (page 20).
- 
- 4.1.14 The same or similar passages as referred to here are also found in D14.
- 4.2 Lack of Novelty Irrespective of Priority Entitlement
- 4.2.1 The "concept" (Applicant's word) of claim 1, claim 2, claim 8, claim 9, claim 10, claim 11 and claim 12 is disclosed by D10 (MRC).
- 4.2.2 D10 was filed on 13 November 1989 (before the priority date claimed by the Opposed Patent) and published on 16 May 1990. It is therefore prior art under Article 54(3) EPC, irrespective of priority entitlement.
- 4.2.3 It is primarily concerned with two aspects: identification of ability of VH domains to bind antigen even without VL domains (the so-called "single domain ligands"), and cloning and expression of antibody V gene repertoires.
- 4.2.4 With respect to the latter, page 9, first column, starting at line 41 states:

*"...the cloned ds cDNA may be inserted into an expression vector already containing sequences encoding one or more constant domains to allow the vector to express Ig-type chains. The expression of Fab fragments, for example, would have the advantage over Fv fragments that the heavy and light chains would tend to associate through the constant domains in addition to the variable domains. The final expression product may be any of the modified Ig-type molecules referred to above.*

*The cloned sequence may also be inserted into an expression vector so that it can be expressed as a fusion protein. The variable domain encoding sequence may be linked directly or via a linker sequence to a*

*DNA sequence encoding any protein effector molecule, such as a toxin, enzyme, label or another ligand. The variable domain sequences may also be linked to proteins on the outer side of bacteria or phage."*

- 4.2.5 The second column of the page goes onto discuss screening of libraries for binding activities. The passage going over onto page 10 says:

*"the ligand may be joined to a protein subunit of a multimeric protein, to a phage coat protein, or to an outer membrane protein of E. coli such as ompA or lamB. Such fusions to phage or bacterial proteins also offers possibilities of selecting bacteria displaying ligands with antigen binding specificities."*

- 4.2.6 This proposes in general terms the idea or concept of fusing antibody fragments including multichain Fv and Fab fragments to a phage coat protein for display allowing for screening for binding activities (although this is not supported by data, nor are filamentous bacteriophage suggested from within the generic term "phage").

- 4.2.7 The next paragraph beginning at line 15 indicates that this suggestion of screening applies not only to the "single chain ligands" that form one independent aspect of the disclosed invention, but also:

*"associated ligands, for example, the associated Ig heavy and light chain variable domains. For example, repertoires of heavy and light chain variable genes may be cloned such that two domains are expressed together."*

- 4.2.8 The first complete paragraph in the second column on page 10 stresses advantages of Fab fragments:

*"Although the binding activities of non-covalently associated heavy and light chain variable domains (Fv fragments) may be screened, suitable fusion proteins may drive the association of the variable domain partners. Thus Fab fragments are more likely to be associated than the Fv fragments, as the heavy chain variable domain is attached to a single heavy chain constant domain, and the light chain variable domain is attached to a single light chain variable domain, and the two constant domains associate together."*

- 4.2.9 A similar discussion appears on page 15 at lines 45-50.

- 4.2.10 Thus there is no novelty in the "concept" of claim 1, claim 2, claim 8, claim 9, claim 10, claim 11 and claim 12 in view of D10, although like the Opposed Patent the relevant proposals in D10 are not supported by data.

5 *Unpatentability - Article 100(a) EPC (Articles 52 to 57) - Lack of Inventive Activity*

5.1 The claimed display of a multichain protein on the surface of viruses lacked inventive activity for failure to solve any technical problem

5.1.1 This is closely related to the invalidity on the ground of Article 100 (b) EPC for failure to meet the requirements of Articles 83 and 84, discussed already above in relation to the Priority Document and specifically addressed below.

5.1.2 During prosecution, the Applicant tried to emphasize problems and uncertainties in the art, and a prejudice against being able to achieve what is claimed. However, with no experimental data being included in the specification and the only hypothetical example in the Patentee not being operable by the ordinary skilled person at the relevant date, it is clear that the claims are not directed to a technical solution provided by the disclosure for a technical problem.

5.1.3 Only display of short peptides was considered viable by the skilled person on the surface of a filamentous bacteriophage (D1 - SMITH), and there was an expectation that it would not be possible to achieve display of larger protein domains (as evidenced by D1 - SMITH, D3 - DE LA CRUZ, D5 - PARMLEY, D7 - PARMLEY II, D13 - BASS, D18 ROBERTS, and the Patentee's own characterisation of the state of the art).

5.1.4 However, insofar as display using the technique of D1 SMITH provided a technique for selection of random, mutated peptides, (page 1316), it was not inventive to want to provide this to a system for display of proteins such as antibodies to allow for selection of proteins able to bind targets of interest.

5.1.5 See, for example, D6 - GENEX - and D8 - PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION - for disclosure of the concept of display of protein domains, including antibodies in "SCAD" format, on the surface of particles such as bacteriophage which contain nucleic acid encoding the displayed protein, and selection of protein domains that bind target ligand of interest.

5.1.6 The concept is also disclosed in D10 - MRC, see especially pages 9 and 10 as discussed above (citable in view of the present lack of priority entitlement).

5.1.7 For proteinaceous binding domains, though, the state of the art was such that the ordinary person skilled in the art expected it not to be possible to display these on the surface of bacteriophage such as filamentous bacteriophage (just one kind of bacteriophage), and was deterred from trying.

5.1.8 The single, hypothetical example provided by the Patent does not work. Accordingly, the skilled person's expectation of it not being possible to display proteinaceous binding domains on the surface of filamentous bacteriophage would have been confirmed had he tried the hypothetical experimental approach suggested in Example 1 of the Patent.

5.1.9 The Patentee may argue that alteration of the approach of Example 1 would have been obvious based on the specification. However, if it had been obvious at the filing date or claimed priority date that this is necessary then surely the application as filed would have disclosed it, rather than teaching an approach which does not work. After all, the named inventors are claiming to be of "greater than ordinary

skill" in claiming to have made a patentable invention that would not have been attainable by the ordinary person skilled in the art.

- 5.1.10 It should be borne in mind also that given an expectation of failure and the absence of experimental results in the specification to motivate the person skilled in the art to proceed, the amount of experimentation which must be considered to provide an "undue burden" is at a low threshold. The skilled in the art expected the claimed display not to be possible, given the state of the art at the time. He would have been sceptical of the mere, unsupported assertions in the specification of the application given the complete absence of any experimental results. The person skilled in the art has been described by the EPO as "lazy" and he would have needed to overcome some real inertia for him to go against the prejudice in the art even to try to perform the experimental procedure suggested in Example 1 of the specification. Even if he managed to motivate himself to try the procedure, the inevitable failure would have simply served to confirm his expectation and he would have had no motivation to look critically at the procedure to see if he could unearth one or more features to vary.
- 5.1.11 Overall, there is a lack of inventive step or inventive activity because the claims extend to subject-matter which does not solve the technical problem. Fundamentally, the invention is unpatentable because the disclosure in the specification contributed absolutely nothing to the art at the claimed priority date (T694/92).
- 5.1.12 What was "not obvious" before the application and priority document were filed remained "not obvious" in view of the disclosure.
- 5.2 The "concept" of the claimed invention was obvious
- 5.2.1 SMITH (D1) had already provided means for creating of large libraries of random peptide sequences in order to select for a binder of interest.
- 5.2.2 PARMLEY (D5) further proposed creation of large libraries (see e.g. page 305, second column, going on to page 306). See also D7- PARMLEY II.
- 5.2.3 DE LA CRUZ (D3) employed peptides displayed on filamentous phage in epitope mapping.
- 5.2.4 These did not teach display and selection of proteinaceous domains nor multichain proteins, and SMITH and PARMLEY in fact taught away technically. The Patent specification merely asserts, contrary to the expectation of the ordinary person skilled in the art at the time, that such display would work, completely failing to provide technical support for what is claimed. The concept, however, was obvious. While it might have been "not obvious" from the prior art that multichain proteinaceous display would work, it remained "not obvious" from the patent specification, since nothing was provided to change the mind-set of the ordinary skilled person. There is a lack of inventive activity disclosed in the specification (T694/92 and T939/92).
- 5.2.5 D10 (MRC), citable given the present lack of priority entitlement, proposes in general terms the idea or concept of fusing antibody fragments including multichain Fv and Fab fragments to a phage coat protein for display allowing for screening for binding activities (top of page 10), although this is not supported by data, nor are filamentous bacteriophage suggested from within the generic term "phage".

- 5.2.6 D8 (PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION) is a full prior art patent application which like the Opposed Patent contains only speculative, hypothetical disclosure. It contains no experimental results. However, it proposes display of "proteinaceous binding domains" on the surface of a variety of different "genetic packages", including a number of viruses and bacteriophage including filamentous bacteriophage (see e.g. the hypothetical Example 1).
- 5.2.7 D6 (GENEX) is a yet further hypothetical disclosure, again proposing display on bacteriophage (specifically 'phage lambda, see hypothetical Example 1) of "SCAD's" - single chain antibody domains. A "SCAD" is intended in D6 to refer to a polypeptide which comprises an antibody VH and an antibody VL domain. Significantly, for the SCAD's to be able to bind antigen it is intended by D6 that the VH and VL domains associate with one another to form an antigen binding site, as they do in natural antibodies and in Fv fragments and Fab fragments.
- 5.2.8 D4 (BETTER) indicates advantages of Fab fragments and their production by expression in bacteria (see e.g. first and second columns of page 1041, also the passage bridging pages 1042-1043).
- 5.2.9 As a concept or simple idea, choosing Fv fragments or Fab fragments as molecules to want to display on viruses such as bacteriophage was obvious. The purpose of wanting to perform such display was known from D1 - SMITH, D5 - PARMLEY and D7 - PARMLEY II, D6 - GENEX, D8 - PROTEIN ENGINEERING CORPORATION, and D10 - MRC, as noted above, i.e. ability to screen for binding molecules in neat packages containing nucleic acid encoding the binding molecules.
- 5.2.10 The invention as claimed lacks inventive activity over any one of these documents taken either alone or in combination with D4 (BETTER).
- 5.2.11 The Applicant pointed out OBVIOUSLY JUSTIFIABLE CONCERNS facing the skilled person as noted. Whereas inventive activity may reside in overcoming prejudices or expectations and showing that a result can be achieved, in the absence of the provision of a disclosure that addresses the OBVIOUSLY JUSTIFIABLE CONCERNS and actually overcomes the prejudice there can be no inventive step in simple statement of the problem in a claim, and provision of an inoperable protocol in the description.
- 5.3 All claims lack inventive activity.

6 ***Insufficiency of Disclosure - Article 100(b) EPC***

- 6.1 This is an important aspect of the Opponent's attack on the Opposed Patent and its serious invalidity. However, since the points made above with respect to a lack of enabling disclosure in the priority document apply under this heading they are not repeated here.
- 6.2 Section 3 above, with reference to the Klug Declaration, and other comments in relation to the Applicant's characterisation of the state of the art at the time are fully reincorporated here as the Opponent's case for invalidity of the Patent under Article 100(b) EPC.
- 6.3 The Klug Declaration explains the flaws in the disclosure in the Patent and concludes:
- "A person attempting phage display of antibodies by the methods of the Dower patent would not succeed."*



7 **Conclusion**

- 7.1 The Opposed Patent has provided nothing of technical value for the person skilled in the art.
- 7.2 It appears only to have been granted at all because the Examining Division was not in a position to appreciate the serious flaws in the hypothetical experimentation. It is not clear in fact that the Examining Division appreciated that the experiments aimed at what was eventually claimed are in fact hypothetical.
- 7.3 There is a failure to provide sufficient information to enable the person skilled in the art to carry out what is claimed and there is invalidity for failure to satisfy the cooperative requirements of Articles 83, 84 and 56 EPC (as explained in T694/92).
- 7.4 The Patentee has so far managed to obtain a patent which goes against the fundamental requirement of the patent system for there to be a *quid pro quo* for the grant of a patent, in the form of a tangible, valuable contribution being made to the state of the art.
- 7.5 T81/87 discussed clearly the
- 
- "misuse of the priority system if some parties in a competitive situation were allowed to jump ahead of others on the basis of mere expectations and by omitting the critical features necessary."*
- 7.6 T81/87 further noted:
- "Missing elements recognised as essential only later on are not part of the disclosure and gaps with regard to basic constituents cannot be retrospectively filled by relying on knowledge acquired in this manner."*
- 7.7 T409/91 concludes:
- "Claims should not extend to subject-matter which, after reading the description, would still not be at the disposal of the person skilled in the art."*
- 7.8 The Patent should be revoked.

Yours faithfully,

Seán M. Walton  
 AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE  
 FOR THE OPPONENT  
 CAMBRIDGE ANTIBODY TECHNOLOGY LIMITED

Encs: List of Authorised Representatives  
 Cited Documents  
 Copy for Patentee

SMW/smw



## METHODS FOR PRODUCING MEMBERS OF SPECIFIC BINDING PAIRS

The present invention relates to methods for producing members of specific binding pairs. The present invention also relates to the biological binding molecules produced by these methods.

Owing to their high specificity for a given antigen, the advent of monoclonal antibodies (Kohler, G. and Milstein C; 1975 Nature 256: 495) represented a significant technical break-through with important consequences both scientifically and commercially.

Monoclonal antibodies are traditionally made by establishing an immortal mammalian cell line which is derived from a single immunoglobulin producing cell secreting one form of a biologically functional antibody molecule with a particular specificity. Because the antibody-secreting mammalian cell line is immortal, the characteristics of the antibody are reproducible from batch to batch. The key properties of monoclonal antibodies are their specificity for a particular antigen and the reproducibility with which they can be manufactured.

Structurally, the simplest antibody (IgG) comprises four polypeptide chains, two heavy (H) chains and two light (L) chains inter-connected by disulphide bonds (see figure 1). The light chains exist in two distinct forms called kappa (K) and lambda ( $\lambda$ ). Each chain has a constant region (C) and a variable region (V). Each chain is organized into a series of domains. The light chains have two domains, corresponding to the C region and the other to the V domain. The heavy chains have four domains, one corresponding to the V region and three domains (1, 2 and 3) in the C region. The antibody has two arms (each arm being a Fab region), each of which has a VL and a VH region associated with each other. It is this pair of V regions (VL and VH) that differ from one antibody to another (owing to amino acid sequence variations), and which together are responsible for recognising the antigen and providing an antigen binding site (ABS). In even more detail, each V region is made up from three complementarity determining regions (CDR) separated by four framework regions (FR). The CDR's are the most variable part of the variable regions, and they perform the critical antigen binding function. The CDR regions are derived from many potential germ line sequences via a complex process involving recombination, mutation and selection.

It has been shown that the function of binding antigens can be performed by fragments of a whole antibody. Example binding fragments are (i) the Fab fragment consisting of the VL, VH, CL and CH1 domains; (ii) the Fd fragment consisting of the VL and CH1 domains; (iii) the Fv fragment consisting of the VL and VH domains of a single arm of an antibody, (iv) the dAb fragment (Ward, E.S. et al., Nature 341, 544-546 (1989) which consists of a VH domain; (v) isolated CDR

regions; and (vi) F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments, a bivalent fragment comprising two Fab fragments linked by a disulphide bridge at the hinge region.

Although the two domains of the Fv fragment are coded for by separate genes, it has proved possible to make a synthetic linker that enables them to be made as a single protein chain (known as single chain Fv (scFv); Bird, R.E. et al., Science 242, 423-426 (1988) Huston, J.S. et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA 85, 5879-5883 (1988)) by recombinant methods. These scFv fragments were assembled from genes from monoclonals that had been previously isolated. In this application, the applicants describe a process to assemble scFv fragments from VH and VL domains that are not part of an antibody that has been previously isolated.

Whilst monoclonal antibodies, their fragments and derivatives have been enormously advantageous, there are nevertheless a number of limitations associated with them. Firstly, the therapeutic applications of monoclonal antibodies produced by human immortal cell lines holds great promise for the treatment of a wide range of diseases.

(Clinical Applications of Monoclonal Antibodies. Edited by E. S. Lennox. British Medical Bulletin 1984. Publishers Churchill Livingstone). Unfortunately, immortal antibody-producing human cell lines are very difficult to establish and they give low yields of antibody (approximately 1  $\mu$ g/ml). In contrast, equivalent rodent cell lines yield high amounts of antibody (approximately 100  $\mu$ g/ml). However, the repeated administration of these foreign rodent proteins to humans can lead to harmful hypersensitivity reactions. In the main therefore, these rodent-derived monoclonal antibodies have limited therapeutic use.

Secondly, a key aspect in the isolation of monoclonal antibodies is how many different clones of antibody producing cells with different specificities, can be practically established and sampled compared to how many theoretically need to be sampled in order to isolate a cell producing antibody with the desired specificity characteristics (Milstein, C., Royal Soc. Croonian Lecture, Proc. R. Soc. London B, 239; 1-16, (1990)). For example, the number of different specificities expressed at any one time by lymphocytes of the murine immune system is thought to be approximately 10<sup>7</sup> and this is only a small proportion of the potential repertoire of specificities. However, during the isolation of a typical antibody producing cell with a desired specificity, the investigator is only able to sample 10<sup>3</sup> to 10<sup>6</sup> individual specificities. The problem is worse in the human, where one has approximately 10<sup>12</sup> lymphocyte specificities, with the limitation on sampling of 10<sup>3</sup> or 10<sup>6</sup> remaining.

This problem has been alleviated to some extent in laboratory animals by the use of immunisation regimes. Thus, where one wants to produce monoclonal antibodies having a specificity against a particular epitope, an animal

is immunised with an immunogen expressing that epitope. The animal will then mount an immune response against the immunogen and there will be a proliferation of lymphocytes which have specificity against the epitope. Owing to this proliferation of lymphocytes with the desired specificity, it becomes easier to detect them in the sampling procedure. However, this approach is not successful in all cases, as a suitable immunogen may not be available. Furthermore, where one wants to produce human monoclonal antibodies (eg for therapeutic administration as previously discussed), such an approach is not practically, or ethically, feasible.

In the last few years, these problems have in part, been addressed by the application of recombinant DNA methods to the isolation and production of e.g. antibodies and fragments of antibodies with antigen binding ability, in bacteria such as *E. coli*.

This simple substitution of immortalised cells with bacterial cells as the 'factory', considerably simplifies procedures for preparing large amounts of binding molecules. Furthermore, a recombinant production system allows scope for producing tailor-made antibodies and fragments thereof. For example, it is possible to produce chimeric molecules with new combinations of binding and effector functions, humanised antibodies (e.g. murine variable regions combined with human constant domains or murine-antibody CDRs grafted onto a human FR) and novel antigen-binding molecules. Furthermore, the use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification (Saiki, R.K., et al., Science 239, 487-491 (1988)) to isolate antibody producing sequences from cells (e.g. hybridomas and B cells) has great potential for speeding up the timescale under which specificities can be isolated. Amplified VH and VL genes are cloned directly into vectors for expression in bacteria or mammalian cells (Orlandi, R., et al., 1989, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA 86, 3833-3837; Ward, E.S., et al., 1989 supra; Larrick, J.W., et al., 1989, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 160, 1250-1255; Sastry, L., et al., 1989, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA, 86, 5728-5732). Soluble antibody fragments secreted from bacteria are then screened for binding activities.

However, like the production system based upon immortalised cells, the recombinant production system still suffers from the selection problems previously discussed and therefore relies on animal immunization to increase the proportion of cells with desired specificity. Furthermore, some of these techniques can exacerbate the screening problems. For example, large separate H and L chain libraries have been produced from immunized mice and combined together in a random combinatorial manner prior to screening (Huse, W.D. et al., 1989, Science 245, 1275-1281, WO90/14443; WO90/14424 and WO90/14430). Crucially however, the information held within each cell, namely the original pairing of one L chain with one H chain, is lost. This loses some, of the advantage gained by using immunization protocols in the animal. Currently, only libraries derived from single VH domains (dAbs; Ward, E.S., et al., 1989,

supra.) do not suffer this drawback. However, because not all antibody VH domains are capable of binding antigen, more have to be screened. In addition, the problem of directly screening many different specificities in prokaryotes remains to be solved.

Thus, there is a need for a screening system which ameliorates or overcomes one or more of the above or other problems. The ideal system would allow the sampling of very large numbers of specificities (eg 10<sup>6</sup> and higher), rapid sorting at each cloning round, and rapid transfer of the genetic material coding for the binding molecule from one stage of the production process, to the next stage.

The most attractive candidates for this type of screening, would be prokaryotic organisms (because they grow quickly, are relatively simple to manipulate and because large numbers of clones can be created) which express and display at their surface a functional binding domain eg. an antibody, receptor, enzyme etc. In the UK patent GB 2137631B methods for the co-expression in a single host cell of the variable H and L chain genes of immunoglobulins were disclosed. However, the protein was expressed intracellularly and was insoluble. Further, the protein required extensive processing to generate antibody fragments with binding activity and this generated material with only a fraction of the binding activity expected for antibody fragments at this concentration. It has already been shown that antibody fragments can be secreted through bacterial membranes with the appropriate signal peptide (Skerra, A. and Pluckthun, A. 1988 Science 240 1038-1040; Better, M et al 1988, Science 240 1041-1043) with a consequent increase in the binding activity of antibody fragments. These methods require screening of individual clones for binding activity in the same way as do mouse monoclonal antibodies. It has not been shown however, how a functional binding domain eg. an antibody, antibody fragment, receptor, enzyme etc can be held on the bacterial surface in a configuration which allows sampling of say its antigen binding properties and selection for clones with desirable properties. In large part, this is because the bacterial surface is a complex structure, and in the gram-negative organisms there is an outer wall which further complicates the position. Further, it has not been shown that eg. an antibody domain will fold correctly when expressed as a fusion with a surface protein of bacteria or bacteriophage.

Bacteriophage are attractive prokaryote related organisms for this type of screening. In general, their surface is a relatively simple structure, they can be grown easily in large numbers, they are amenable to the practical handling involved in many potential mass screening programmes, and they carry genetic information for their own synthesis within a small, simple package. The difficulty has been to practically solve the problem of how to use bacteriophages in this manner. A Genex Corporation patent application number W088/06630 has proposed that the bacteriophage lambda would be a suitable vehicle for the

expression of antibody molecules, but they do not provide a teaching which enables the general idea to be carried out. For example WO88/06630 does not demonstrate that any sequences: (a) have been expressed as a fusion with gene VI; (b) have been expressed on the surface of lambda; and (c) have been expressed so that the protein retains biological activity. Furthermore there is no teaching on how to screen for suitable fusions. Also, since the lambda virions are assembled within the cell, the fusion protein would be expressed intracellularly and would be predicted to be inactive. Baas et al., in December 1990 (after the earliest priority date for the present application) describe deleting part of gene III of the filamentous bacteriophage M13 and inserting the coding sequence for human growth hormone (hGH) into the N-terminal site of the gene. The growth hormone displayed by M13 was shown to be functional. (Baas, S., et al. Proteins, Structure, Function and Genetics (1990) 9: 309-314). A functional copy of gene III was always present in addition. When this fusion was expressed. A Protein Engineering Corporation patent application WO90/02809 proposes the insertion of the coding sequence for bovine pancreatic trypsin inhibitor (BPTI) into gene VIII of M13. However, the proposal was not shown to be operative. For example, there is no demonstration of the expression of BPTI sequences as fusions with protein VIII and display on the surface of M13. Furthermore this document teaches that when a fusion is made with gene III, it is necessary to use a second synthetic copy of gene III, so that some unaltered gene III protein will be present. The embodiments of the present application do not do this. In embodiments where phagemid is rescued with M13K07 gene III deletion phage, there is no unaltered gene III present.

WO90/02809 also teaches that phagemids that do not contain the full genome of M13 and require rescue by coinfection with helper phage are not suitable for these purposes because coinfection could lead to recombination.

In all embodiments where the present applicants have used phagemids, they have used a helper phage and the only sequences derived from filamentous bacteriophage in the phagemids are the origin of replication and gene III sequences.

WO90/02809 also teaches that their process needed information such as nucleotide sequence of the starting molecule and its three-dimensional structure. The use of a pre-existing repertoire of binding molecules to collect for a binding member, such as is disclosed herein, for example using an immunoglobulin gene repertoire of animals, was not disclosed. Further, they do not discuss favouring variation of their binding molecules in natural blocks of variation such as CDRs of immunoglobulin, in order to favour generation of improved molecules and prevent unfavourable variations. WO90/02809 also specifically excluded the application of their process to the production of scFv molecules.

In each of the above discussed patents (WO88/06630 and

WO90/02809), the protein proposed for display is a single polypeptide chain. There is no disclosure of a method for the display of a dimeric molecule by expression of one monomer as a fusion with a capsid protein and the other protein in a free form.

Another disclosure published in May 1991 (after the earliest priority date for the present application) describes the insertion into gene VIII of M13, the coding sequences for one of the two chains of the Fab portion of an antibody with co-expression of the other from a plasmid. The two chains were demonstrated as being expressed as a functional Fab fragment on the surface of the phage (Wang A.S., et al., (1991) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 88 p4363-4366). No disclosure was made of the site of insertion into gene VIII and the assay for pAb binding activity by ELISA used a reagent specific for antibody L chain rather than for phage. A further disclosure published in March 1991 (after the earliest priority date for the present application) describes the insertion of a fragment of the AIDS virus protein gag into the N-terminal portion of gene III of the bacteriophage fd. The expression of the gag protein fragment was detected by immunological methods, but it was not shown whether or not the protein was expressed in a functional form (Tomotougu-Yokota Y et al. (1991) Gene 99 p261-265).

The problem of how to use bacteriophages in this way is in fact a difficult one. The protein must be inserted into the phage in such a way that the integrity of the phage coat is not undermined, and the protein itself should be functional retaining its biological activity with respect to antigen binding. Thus, where the protein of choice is an antibody, it should fold efficiently and correctly and be potentiated for antigen binding. Solving the problem for antibody molecules and fragments would also provide a general method for any biomolecule which is a member of a specific binding pair e.g. receptor molecules and enzymes.

Surprisingly, the applicants have been able to construct a bacteriophage that expresses and displays at its surface a large biologically functional binding molecule (of antibody fragments, and enzymes and receptors) and which remains intact and infectious. The applicants have called the structure which comprises a virus particle and a binding molecule displayed at the viral surface a 'package'. Where the binding molecule is an antibody, an antibody derivative or fragment, or a domain that is homologous to an immunoglobulin domain, the applicants call the package a 'phage antibody' (pAb). However, except where the content demands otherwise, where the term phage antibody is used generally, it should also be interpreted as referring to any package comprising a virus particle and a biologically functional binding molecule displayed at the viral surface.

pAbs have a range of applications in selecting antibody genes encoding antigen binding activities. For example, pAbs could be used for the cloning and rescue of hybridomas

(Orlandi, R., et al (1989) PNAS 86 p3833-3837), and in the screening of large combinatorial libraries (such as found in Huse, W.D. et al., 1989, Science 246, 1275-1281). In particular, rounds of selection using pAbs may help in rescuing the higher affinity antibodies from the latter libraries. It may be preferable to screen small libraries derived from antigen-selected calls (Casali, P., et al., (1986) Science 234 p476-479) to rescue the original VH/VL pairs comprising the Fv region of an antibody. The use of pAbs may also allow the construction of entirely synthetic antibodies. Furthermore, antibodies may be made which have some synthetic sequences e.g. CDRs, and some naturally derived sequences. For example, V-gene reporters could be made in vitro by combining un-rearranged V genes, with D and J segments. Libraries of pAbs could then be selected by binding to antigen, hypermutated in vitro in the antigen-binding loops or V domain framework regions, and subjected to further rounds of selection and mutagenesis.

As previously discussed, separate H and L chain libraries lose the original pairing between the chains. It is difficult to make and screen a large enough library for a particularly advantageous combination of H and L chains. For example, in a mouse there are approximately  $10^7$  possible H chains and  $10^7$  possible L chains. Therefore, there are  $10^{14}$  possible combinations of H and L chains, and to test for anything like this number of combinations one would have to create and screen a library of about  $10^{14}$  clones. This has not previously been a practical possibility.

The present invention provides a number of approaches which ameliorate this problem.

In a first approach, (a random combinatorial approach, see examples 20 and 21) as large a library as is practically possible is created which expresses as many of the  $10^{14}$  potential combinations as possible. However, by virtue of the expression of the H and L chains on the surface of the phage, it is reasonably practicable to select the desired combination, from all the generated combinations by affinity techniques (see later for description of selection formats).

In a second approach (called a dual combinatorial approach by the present applicants, see example 26), a large library is created from two smaller libraries for selection of the desired combination. This ameliorates the problems still further. The approach involves the creation of: (i) a first library of say  $10^7$  e.g. H chains which are displayed on a bacteriophage (as a fusion with the protein encoded by gene III) which is resistant to e.g. tetracycline; and (ii) a second library of say  $10^7$  e.g. L chains in which the coding sequences for these light chains are within a plasmid vector containing an origin of replication for a bacteriophage (a phagemid) which is resistant to e.g. ampicillin (i.e. a different antibiotic) and are expressed in the periplasmic space of a host bacterium. The first library is then used to infect the bacteria containing the second library to provide  $10^{14}$  combinations of H and L

chains on the surface of the resulting phage in the bacterial supernatant.

The advantage of this approach is that two separate libraries of eg  $10^7$  are created in order to produce  $10^{14}$  combinations. Creating a  $10^{14}$  library is a practical possibility.

The  $10^{14}$  combinations are then subjected to selection (see later for description of selection formats) as disclosed by the present application. This selection will then produce a population of phages displaying a particular combination of H and L chains having the desired specificity. The phages selected however, will only contain DNA encoding one partner of the paired H and L chains (deriving from either the phage or phagemid). The sample eluate containing the population is then divided into two portions. A first portion is grown on e.g. tetracycline plates to select those bacteriophage containing DNA encoding H chains which are involved in the desired antigen binding. A second portion is grown on e.g. ampicillin plates to select those bacteriophage containing phagemid DNA encoding L chains which are involved in the desired antigen binding. A set of colonies from individually isolated clones e.g. from the tetracycline plates are then used to infect specific colonies e.g. from the ampicillin plates. This results in bacteriophage expressing specific combinations of H and L chains which can then be assayed for antigen binding.

In a third approach (called a hierarchical dual combinatorial approach by the present applicants), an individual colony from either the H or L chain clones selected by growth on the antibiotic plates, is used to infect a complete library of clones encoding the other chain (H or L). Selection is as described above. This favours isolation of the most favourable combination.

In a fourth approach (called a hierarchical approach by the present applicants, see examples 22 and 46) both chains are cloned into the same vector. However, one of the chains which is already known to have desirable properties is kept fixed. A library of the complementary chain is inserted into the same vector. Suitable partners for the fixed chain are selected following display on the surface of bacteriophage.

In a fifth approach (see example 48), to improve the chances of recovering original pairs, the complexity of the combinatorial libraries can be reduced by using small B populations of B-lymphocytes selected for binding to a desired antigen. The cells provide e.g. mRNA or DNA, for preparing libraries of antibody genes for display on phage. This technique can be used in combination with the above mentioned four approaches for selection of antibody specificities.

Phagemids have been mentioned above. The applicants have realised and demonstrated that in many cases phagemids will be preferred to phage for cloning antibodies because it is easier to use them to generate more comprehensive

libraries of the immune repertoire. This is because the phagemid DNA is approximately 100 times more efficient than bacteriophage DNA in transforming bacteria (see example 19). Also, the use of phagemids gives the ability to vary the number of gene III binding molecule fusion proteins displayed on the surface of the bacteriophage (see example 17). For example, in a system comprising a bacterial cell containing a phagemid encoding a gene III fusion protein and infected with a helper phage, induction of expression of the gene III fusion protein to different extents, will determine the number of gene III fusion proteins present in the space defined between the inner and outer bacterial membranes following superinfection. This will determine the ratio of gene III fusion protein to native gene III protein displayed by the assembled phage.

Expressing a single fusion protein per virion may aid selection of antibody specificities on the basis of affinity by avoiding the 'avidity' effect where a phage expressing two copies of a low affinity antibody would have the same apparent affinity as a phage expressing one copy of a higher affinity antibody. In some cases however, it will be important to display all the gene III molecules derived by superinfection of cells containing phagemids to have fusions (e.g. for selecting low affinity binding molecules or improving sensitivity on ELISA). One way to do this is to superinfect with a bacteriophage which contains a defective gene III. The applicants have therefore developed and used a phage which is deleted in gene III. This is completely novel.

The demonstration that a functional antigen-binding domain can be displayed on the surface of phage, has implications beyond the construction of novel antibodies. For example, if other protein domains can be displayed at the surface of a phage, phage vectors could be used to clone and select genes by the binding properties of the displayed protein. Furthermore, variants of proteins, including epitope libraries built into the surface of the protein, could be made and readily selected for binding activities. In effect, other protein architectures might serve as "nouvelles" antibodies.

The technique provides the possibility of building antibodies from first principles, taking advantage of the structural framework on which the antigen binding loops fold. In general, these loops have a limited number of conformations which generate a variety of binding sites by alternative loop combinations and by diverse side chains. Recent successes in modelling antigen binding sites augurs well for *de novo* design. In any case, a high resolution structure of the antigen is needed. However, the approach is attractive for making e.g. catalytic antibodies, particularly for small substrates. Here side chains or binding sites for prosthetic groups might be introduced, not only to bind selectively to the transition state of the substrate, but also to participate directly in bond making and breaking. The only question is whether the antibody

architecture, specialised for binding, is the best starting point for building catalysts. Genuine enzyme architectures, such as the triose phosphate isomerase (TIM) barrel, might be more suitable. Like antibodies, TIM enzymes also have a framework structure (a barrel of  $\beta$ -strands and  $\alpha$ -helices) and loops to bind substrate. Many enzymes with a diversity of catalytic properties are based on this architecture and the loops might be manipulated independently on the frameworks for design of new catalytic and binding properties. The phage selection system as provided by the present disclosure can be used to select for antigen binding activities and the CDR loops thus selected, used on either an antibody framework or a TIM barrel framework. Loops placed on e.g. a TIM barrel framework could be further modified by mutagenesis and subjected to further selection. Thus, there is no need to select for high affinity binding activities in a single step. The strategy of the immune system, in which low affinity evolves to high affinity seems more realistic and can be mimicked using this invention.

One class of molecules that could be useful in this type of application are receptors. For example, a specific receptor could be displayed on the surface of the phage such that it would bind its ligand. The receptor could then be modified, for example, in vitro mutagenesis and variants having higher binding affinity for the ligand selected. The selection may be carried out according to one or more of the formats described below with reference to figure 2 (which refers particularly to pAbs) in which the pAb antibody is replaced with a phage receptor and the antigen with a ligand.

Alternatively, the phage-receptor could be used as the basis of a rapid screening system for the binding of ligands, altered ligands, or potential drug candidates. The advantages of this system namely of simple cloning, convenient expression, standard reagents and easy handling makes the drug screening application particularly attractive. In the context of this discussion, receptor means a molecule that binds a specific, or group of specific, ligand(s). The natural receptor could be expressed on the surface of a population of cells, or it could be the extracellular domain of such a molecule (whether such a form exists naturally or not), or a soluble molecule performing a natural binding function in the plasma, or within a cell or organ.

Another possibility, is the display of an enzyme molecule or active site of an enzyme molecule on the surface of a phage (see examples 11,12,30,31,32 and 36). Once the phage enzyme is expressed, it can be selected by affinity chromatography, for instance on columns derivatized with transition state analogues. If an enzyme with a different or modified specificity is desired, it may be possible to mutate an enzyme displayed as a fusion on bacteriophage and then select on a column derivatised with an analogue selected to have a higher affinity for an enzyme with the desired modified specificity.



Although throughout this application, the applicants discuss the possibility of screening for higher affinity variants of pAbs, they recognise that in some applications, for example low affinity chromatography (Ohlson, S. et al Anal. Biochem. 169, p204-208 (1988)), it may be desirable to isolate lower affinity variants.

Examples 21 and 23 show that the present invention provides a way of producing antibodies with low affinities (as seen in the primary immune response or in unimmunised animals). This is made possible by displaying multiple copies of the antibody on the phage surface in association with gene III protein. Thus, pAbs allow genes for these antibodies to be isolated and if necessary, mutated to provide improved antibodies.

pAbs also allow the selection of antibodies for improved stability. It has been noted for many antibodies, that yield and stability are improved when the antibodies are expressed at 30°C rather than 37°C. If pAbs are displayed at 37°C, only those which are stable will be available for affinity selection. When antibodies are to be used in vivo for therapeutic or diagnostic purposes, increased stability would extend the half-life of antibodies in circulation.

Although stability is important for all antibodies and antibody domains selected using phage, it is particularly important for the selection of Fv fragments which are formed by the non-covalent association of VH and VL fragments. Fv fragments have a tendency to dissociate and have a much reduced half-life in circulation compared to whole antibodies. Fv fragments are displayed on the surface of phage, by the association of one chain expressed as a gene III protein fusion with the complementary chain expressed as a soluble fragment. If pairs of chains have a high tendency to dissociate, they will be much less likely to be selected as pAbs. Therefore, the population will be enriched for pairs which do associate stably. Although dissociation is less of a problem with Fab fragments, selection would also occur for Fab fragments which associate stably. pAbs allow selection for stability to protease attack, only those pAbs that are not cleaved by proteases will be capable of binding their ligand and therefore populations of phage will be enriched for those displaying stable antibody domains.

The technique of displaying binding molecules on the phage surface can also be used as a primary cloning system. For example, a cDNA library can be constructed and inserted into the bacteriophage and this phage library screened for the ability to bind a ligand. The ligand/binding molecule combination could include any pair of molecules with an ability to specifically bind to

one. Another e.g. receptor/ligand, enzyme/substrate (or analogue), nucleic acid binding protein/nucleic acid etc. If one member of the complementary pair is available, this may be a preferred way of isolating a clone for the other member of the pair.

It will often be necessary to increase the diversity of a population of genes cloned for the display of their proteins on phage or to mutate an individual nucleotide sequence. Although in vitro or in vivo mutagenesis techniques could be used for either purpose, a particularly suitable method would be to use mutator strains. A mutator strain is a strain which contains a genetic defect which causes DNA replicated within it to be mutated with respect to its parent DNA. Hence if a population of genes as gene III fusions is introduced into these strains it will be further diversified and can then be transferred to a non-mutator strain, if desired, for display and selection. Example 38 covers the use of mutator strains with phage antibodies (an example of in vitro mutagenesis and selection of phage antibodies is given in example 45).

#### Targeted gene transfer

A useful and novel set of applications makes use of the binding protein on the phage to target the phage genome to a particular cell or group of cells. For example, a pAb specific for a cell surface molecule could be used to bind to the target cell via the surface molecule. The phage could then be internalised, either through the action of the receptor itself or as the result of another event (e.g. an electrical discharge such as in the technique of electroporation). The phage genome would then be expressed if the relevant control signals (for transcription and translation and possibly replication) were present. This would be particularly useful if the phage genome contained a sequence whose expression was desired in the target cell (along with the appropriate expression control sequences). A useful sequence might confer antibiotic resistance to the recipient cell or label the cell by the expression of its product (e.g. if the sequence expressed a detectable gene product such as a luciferase, see White, M. et al, Techniques 2(4), p194-201 (1990)), or confer a particular property on the target cell (e.g. if the target cell was a tumour cell and the new sequence directed the expression of a tumour suppressing gene), or express an antisense construct designed to turn off a gene or set of genes in the target cell, or a gene or gene product designed to be toxic to the target cell.

Alternatively, the sequence whose expression is desired in the target cell can be encoded on a phagemid. The phagemid DNA may then be incorporated into a phage displaying an antibody specific for a cell surface



13

receptor. For example, incorporation may be by superinfection of bacteria containing the phagemid, with a helper phage whose genome encodes the antibody fragment specific for the target cell. The package is then used to direct the phagemid to the target cell.

This technique of "targeted gene transfer" has a number of uses in research and also in therapy and diagnostics. For example, gene therapy often aims to target the replacement gene to a specific cell type that is deficient in its activity. Targeting phbs provide a means of achieving this.

In diagnostics, phage specific for particular bacteria or groups of bacteria have been used to target marker genes, e.g. luciferase, to the bacterial host (see, for example, Uitzar, S., and Kuhn, J., EPA 8530391.3.9). If the host range of the phage is appropriate, only those bacteria that are being tested for, will be infected by the phage, express the luciferase gene and be detected by the light they emit. This system has been used to detect the presence of *Salmonella*. One major problem with this approach is the initial isolation of a bacteriophage with the correct host range and then the cloning of a luciferase gene cassette into that phage, such that it is functional. The phb system allows the luciferase cassette to be cloned into a well characterised system (filamentous phage) and allows simple selection of an appropriate host range, by modifying the antibody (or other binding molecule) specificity that the phb encodes.

The present applicants have also been able to develop novel selection systems and assay formats which depend on the unique properties of these replicable genetic display packages e.g. phbs.

#### TERMINOLOGY

Much of the terminology discussed in this section has been mentioned in the text where appropriate.

#### Specific Binding Pair

This describes a pair of molecules (each being a member of a specific binding pair) which are naturally derived or synthetically produced. One of the pair of molecules, has an area on its surface, or a cavity which specifically binds to, and is therefore defined as complementary with a particular spatial and polar organisation of the other molecule, so that the pair have the property of binding specifically to each other. Examples of types of specific binding pairs are antigen-antibody, biotin-avidin, hormone-hormone receptor, receptor-ligand, enzyme-substrate, IgG-protein A.

#### Multimeric Member

This describes a first polypeptide which will associate with at least a second polypeptide, when the polypeptides are expressed in free form and/or on the

14

surface of a substrate. The substrate may be provided by a bacteriophage. Where there are two associated polypeptides, the associated polypeptide complex is a dimer, where there are three, a trimer etc. The dimer, trimer, multimer etc or the multimeric member may comprise a member of a specific binding pair.

Example multimeric members are heavy domains based on an immunoglobulin molecule, light domains based on an immunoglobulin molecule, T-cell receptor subunits.

Replicable Genetic Display Package (RGDP)  
This describes a biological particle which has genetic information providing the particle with the ability to replicate. The particle can display on its surface at least part of a polypeptide. The polypeptide can be encoded by genetic information native to the particle and/or artificially placed into the particle or an ancestor of it. The displayed polypeptide may be any member of a specific binding pair eg. heavy or light chain domains based on an immunoglobulin molecule, an enzyme or a receptor etc.

The particle may be a virus eg. a bacteriophage such as fd or M13.

#### Package

This describes a replicable genetic display package in which the particle is displaying a member of a specific binding pair at its surface. The package may be a bacteriophage which displays an antigen binding domain at its surface. This type of package has been called a phage antibody (phb).

#### Antibody

This describes an immunoglobulin whether natural or partly or wholly synthetically produced. The term also covers any protein having a binding domain which is homologous to an immunoglobulin binding domain. These proteins can be derived from natural sources, or partly or wholly synthetically produced.

Example antibodies are the immunoglobulin isotypes and the Fab, Fab<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>, scFv, Fv, dAb, Fd fragments.

#### Immunoglobulin Superfamily

This describes a family of polypeptides, the members of which have at least one domain with a structure related to that of the variable or constant domain of immunoglobulin molecules. The domain contains two  $\beta$ -sheets and usually a conserved disulphide bond (see A.P. Williams and A.N. Barclay 1988 Ann. Rev Immunol. 6 381-405).

Example members of an immunoglobulin superfamily are CD4, platelet derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR), intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM). Except where the context otherwise dictates, reference to immunoglobulins and immunoglobulin homologs in this application includes members of the immunoglobulin

15

superfamily and homologs thereof.

#### Homologs

This term indicates polypeptides having the same or conserved residues at a corresponding position in their primary, secondary or tertiary structure. The term also extends to two or more nucleotide sequences encoding the homologous polypeptides.

Example homologous peptides are the immunoglobulin isotypes.

#### Functional

In relation to a sbp member displayed on the surface of a rgdp, means that the sbp member is presented in a folded form in which its specific binding domain for its complementary sbp member is the same or closely analogous to its native configuration, whereby it exhibits similar specificity with respect to the complementary sbp member. In this respect, it differs from the peptides of Smith et al, supra, which do not have a definite folded configuration and can assume a variety of configurations determined by the complementary members with which they may be contacted.

#### Genetically diverse population

In connection with sbp members or polypeptide components thereof, this is referring not only to diversity that can exist in the natural population of cells or organisms, but also diversity that can be created by artificial mutation in vitro or in vivo.

Mutation in vitro may for example, involve random mutagenesis using oligonucleotides having random mutations of the sequence desired to be varied. In vivo mutagenesis may for example, use mutator strains of host microorganisms to harbour the DNA (see Example 38 below).

#### Domain

A domain is a part of a protein that is folded within itself and independently of other parts of the same protein and independently of a complementary binding member.

#### Folded Unit

This is a specific combination of an  $\alpha$ -helix and/or  $\beta$ -strand and/or  $\beta$ -turn structure. Domains and folded units contain structures that bring together amino acids that are not adjacent in the primary structure.

#### Free Form

This describes the state of a polypeptide which is not displayed by a replicable genetic display package.

#### Conditionally Defective

This describes a gene which does not express a particular polypeptide under one set of conditions, but expresses it under another set of conditions. An example, is a gene containing an amber mutation expressed in non-suppressing or suppressing hosts respectively.

Alternatively, a gene may express a protein which is

16

defective under one set of conditions, but not under another set. An example is a gene with a temperature sensitive mutation.

#### Suppressible Translational Stop Codon

This describes a codon which allows the translation of nucleotide sequences downstream of the codon under one set of conditions, but under another set of conditions translation ends at the codon. Example of suppressible translational stop codons are the amber, ochre and opal codons.

#### Mutator Strain

This is a host cell which has a genetic defect which causes DNA replicated within it to be mutated with respect to its parent DNA. Example mutator strains are NR9046mutD5 and NR9046 mut T1 (see Example 38).

#### Helper Phage

This is a phage which is used to infect cells containing a defective phage genome and which functions to complement the defect. The defective phage genome can be a phagemid or a phage with some function encoding gene sequences removed. Examples of helper phages are M13K07, M13K07 gene III no. 3; and phage displaying or encoding a binding molecule fused to a capsid protein.

#### Vector

This is a DNA molecule, capable of replication in a host organism, into which a gene is inserted to construct a recombinant DNA molecule.

#### Phage Vector

This is a vector derived by modification of a phage genome, containing an origin of replication for a bacteriophage, but not one for a plasmid.

#### Phagemid Vector

This is a vector derived by modification of a plasmid genome, containing an origin of replication for a bacteriophage as well as the plasmid origin of replication.

#### Secreted

This describes a rgdp or molecule that associates with the member of a sbp displayed on the rgdp, in which the sbp member and/or the molecule, have been folded and the package assembled externally to the cellular cytosol.

#### Repertoire of Rearranged Immunoglobulin Genes

A collection of naturally occurring nucleotides eg DNA sequences which encoded expressed immunoglobulin genes in an animal. The sequences are generated by the in vivo rearrangement of eg V, D and J segments for H chains and eg the V and J segments for L chains. Alternatively the sequences may be generated from a cell line immunised in vitro and in which the rearrangement in response to immunisation occurs intracellularly.

#### Library

A collection of nucleotide eg DNA, sequences within

clones.

# Repertoire of Artificially Rearranged Immunoglobulin Genes

5 A collection of nucleotide eg DNA sequences derived wholly or partly from a source other than the rearranged immunoglobulin sequences from an animal. This may include for example, DNA sequences encoding VH domains by combining unrearranged V segments with D and J segments and DNA sequences encoding VL domains by combining V and J segments.

10 Part or all of the DNA sequences may be derived by oligonucleotide synthesis.

## Secretory Leader Peptide

15 This is a sequence of amino acids joined to the N-terminal end of a polypeptide and which directs movement of the polypeptide out of the cytosol.

20 This is a solution used to breakdown the linkage between two molecules. The linkage can be a non-covalent or covalent bond(s). The two molecules can be members of a sbp.

## Derivative

25 This is a substance which derived from a polypeptide which is encoded by the DNA within a selected rgdp. The derivative polypeptide may differ from the encoded polypeptide by the addition, deletion, substitution or insertion of amino acids, or by the linkage of other molecules to the encoded polypeptide. These changes may be made at the nucleotide or protein level. For example the encoded polypeptide may be a Fab fragment which is then linked to an Fc tail from another source. Alternatively markers such as enzymes, fluorescentins etc may be linked to eg Fab, scFv fragments.

30 The present invention provides a method for producing a replicable genetic display package or population such rgdps of which method comprises the steps of:

35 a) inserting a nucleotide sequence encoding a member of a specific binding pair eg a binding molecule within a viral genome;

40 b) culturing the virus containing said nucleotide sequence, so that said binding molecule is expressed and displayed by the virus at its surface.

45 The present invention also provides a method for selecting a rgdp specific for a particular epitope which comprises producing a population of such rgdps as described above and the additional step of selecting for said binding molecule by contacting the population with said epitope so that individual rgdps with the desired specificity may bind to said epitope. The method may comprise one or more of the additional steps of: (i) separating any bound rgdps from the epitope; (ii)

recovering any separated rgdps and (iii) using the inserted nucleotide sequences from any separated rgdps in a recombinant system to produce the binding molecule separate from virus. The selection step may isolate the nucleotide sequence encoding the binding molecule of desired specificity, by virtue of said binding molecule being expressed in association with the surface of the virus in which said encoding nucleic acid is contained.

5 The present invention also provides a method of producing a multimeric member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises:

10 expressing in a recombinant host organism a first polypeptide chain of said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of said sbp member fused to a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which thereby displays said polypeptide at the surface of the package, and expressing in a recombinant host organism a second polypeptide chain of said multimer and causing or allowing the polypeptide chains to come together to form said multimer as part of said rgdp at least one of said polypeptide chains being expressed from nucleic acid that is capable of being packaged using said component thereof, whereby the genetic material of each said rgdp encodes a said polypeptide chain.

15 Both said chains may be expressed in the same host organism.

20 The first and second chains of said multimer may be expressed as separate chains from a single vector containing their respective nucleic acid.

25 At least one of said polypeptide chains may be expressed from a phage vector.

30 At least one of said polypeptide chains may be expressed from a phageid vector, the method including using a helper phage, or a phageid expressing complementing phage genes, to help package said phageid genome, and said component of the rgdp is a capsid protein thereof. The capsid protein may be absent, defective or conditionally defective in the helper phage.

35 The method may comprise introducing a vector capable of expressing said first polypeptide chain, into a host organism which expresses said second polypeptide chain in free form, or introducing a vector capable of expressing said second polypeptide in free form into a host organism which expresses said first polypeptide chain.

40 Each of the polypeptide chain may be expressed from nucleic acid which is capable of being packaged as a rgdp using said component fusion product, whereby encoding nucleic acid for both said polypeptide chains are packaged in respective rgdps.

45 The nucleic acid encoding at least one of said first and second polypeptide chains may be obtained from a

19

library of nucleic acid including nucleic acid encoding said chain or a population of variants of said chain. Both the first and second polypeptide chains may be obtained from respective said libraries of nucleic acid.

The present invention also provides a method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp), from a nucleic acid library including nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of said type of sbp members, which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells polypeptides encoded by said library nucleic acid fused to a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) or in free form for association with a polypeptide component of said sbp member which is expressed as a fusion to said rgdp component so that the rgdp displays said sbp member in functional form at the surface of the package, said library nucleic acid being contained within the host cells in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component, whereby the genetic material of an rgdp displaying an sbp member contains nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof.

The nucleotide sequences for the libraries may be derived from eg animal spleen cells or peripheral blood lymphocytes. Alternatively the nucleotide sequence may be derived by the *in vitro* mutagenesis of an existing antibody coding sequence.

The present invention also provides a method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of said type of sbp member wherein the or each said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof is expressed as a fusion with a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying said sbp member encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof, said host organism being a mutator strain which introduces genetic diversity into the sbp member to produce said mixed population.

The present invention also provides a method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid

20

encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of said type of sbp member wherein the or each said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof is expressed as a fusion with a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member in functional form at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying an sbp member encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof, said fusions being with bacteriophage capsid protein and the rgdp being formed with said fusions in the absence of said capsid expressed in wild-type form.

The present invention also provides a method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp) which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of said type of sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof fused to a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member in functional form at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying an sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof, said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being expressed from a phagemid as a capsid fusion, and a helper phage, or a plasmid, expressing complementing phage genes, is used along with said capsid fusions to package the phagemid nucleic acid.

The library or genetically diverse population may be obtained from:

- (i) the repertoire of rearranged immunoglobulin genes of an animal immunised with complementary sbp member,
- (ii) the repertoire of rearranged immunoglobulin genes of an animal not immunised with complementary sbp member,
- (iii) a repertoire of artificially rearranged immunoglobulin gene or genes
- (iv) a repertoire of immunoglobulin homolog genes or genes; or
- (v) a mixture of any of (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv).

The capsid protein may be absent, defective or



protein in defective or conditionally defective form.

The present invention also provides a bacterial host cell containing a filamentous phage genome defective for a capsid protein thereof and wherein the host cell is capable of expressing capsid protein complementing said defect such that infectious phage particles can be obtained therefrom. The complementing capsid protein may be expressed in said host from another vector contained therein. The defective capsid protein may be gene III of phage fd or its counterpart in another filamentous phage. The present invention also provides recombinant *E. coli* Td1 M13KO7 gIII No. 3 (NCTC 12478).

The present invention also provides a phage antibody having the form of a replicable genetic display package displaying on its surface in functional form a member of a specific binding pair or a specific binding domain thereof.

In the above methods, the binding molecule may be an antibody, or a domain that is homologous to an immunoglobulin. The antibody and/or domain may be either naturally derived or synthetic or a combination of both. The domain may be a Fab, scFv, Fv dAb or Fd molecule. Alternatively, the binding molecule may be an enzyme or receptor or fragment, derivative or analogue of any such enzyme or receptor. Alternatively, the binding molecule may be a member of an immunoglobulin superfamily and which has a structural form based on an immunoglobulin molecule.

The present invention also provides rgdps as defined above and members of specific binding pairs eg. binding molecules such as antibodies, enzymes, receptors, fragments and derivatives thereof, obtainable by use of any of the above defined methods. The derivatives may comprise members of the specific binding pairs fused to another molecule such as an enzyme or a Fc tail.

The invention also includes kits for carrying out the methods hereof. The kits will include the necessary vectors. One such vector will typically have an origin of replication for single stranded bacteriophage and either contain the sbp member nucleic acid or have a restriction site for its insertion in the 5' end region of the mature coding sequence of a phage capsid protein, and with a secretory leader coding sequence upstream of said site which directs a fusion of the capsid protein exogenous polypeptide to the periplasmic space.

The restriction sites in the vectors are preferably those of enzymes which cut only rarely in protein coding sequences.

The kit preferably includes a phagemid vector which may have the above characteristics, or may contain, or have a site for insertion, of sbp member nucleic acid for expression of the encoded polypeptide in free form.

The kits will also contain ancillary components required for carrying out the method, the nature of such components depending of course on the particular method employed.

Useful ancillary components may comprise helper phage, PCR primers, and buffers and enzymes of various kinds.

PCR primers and associated reagents for use where the sbp members are antibodies may have the following characteristics:

(i) primers having homology to the 5' end of the sense or anti-sense strand of sequences encoding domains of antibodies; and

(ii) primers including tag sequences 5' to these homologous sequences which incorporate restriction sites to allow insertion into vectors; together with sequences to allow assembly of amplified VH and VL regions to enable expression as Fv, scFv or Fab fragments.

Buffers and enzymes are typically used to enable preparation of nucleotide sequences encoding Fv, scFv or Fab fragments derived from rearranged or unrearranged immunoglobulin genes according to the strategies described herein.

The applicants have chosen the filamentous  $\lambda$ -specific bacteriophages as an example of the type of phage which could provide a vehicle for the display of binding molecules e.g. antibodies and antibody fragments and derivatives thereof, on their surface and facilitate subsequent selection and manipulation.

The  $\lambda$ -specific phages (e.g. fl, fd and M13) have evolved a method of propagation which does not kill the host cell and they are used commonly as vehicles for recombinant DNA (Kornberg, A., DNA Replication, W.H. Freeman and Co., San Francisco, 1980). The single stranded DNA genome (approximately 6.4 Kb) of fd is extruded through the bacterial membrane where it sequesters capsid sub-units, to produce mature virions. These virions are 6 nm in diameter, 1  $\mu$ m in length and each contain approximately 2,800 molecules of the major coat protein encoded by viral gene VIII and four molecules of the adsorption molecule gene III protein (gIII) the latter is located at one end of the virion.

The structure has been reviewed by Webster et al., 1978 in the Single Stranded DNA Phages, 557-569, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press. The gene III product is involved in the binding of the phage to the bacterial  $\lambda$ -pilus.

Although these phages do not kill their host during normal replication, disruption of some of their genes can lead to cell death (Kornberg, A., 1980 supra.) This places some restraint on their use. The applicants have

recognized that gene III of phage fd is an attractive possibility for the insertion of biologically active foreign sequences. There are however, other candidate sites including for example gene VIII and gene VI.

The protein itself is only a minor component of the phage coat and disruption of the gene does not lead to cell death (Smith, G. 1988, *Virology* 167: 156-165). Furthermore, it is possible to insert some foreign sequences (with no biological function) into various positions within this gene (Smith, G. 1985 *Science* 228: 1315-1317., Parmley, S.F. and Smith, G.P. *Gene* 73 (1988) p. 305-318., and de la Cruz, V.F., et al., 1988, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 263: 4318-4322). Smith et al described the display of peptides on the outer surface of phage but they did not describe the display of protein domains. Peptides can adopt a range of structures which can be different when in free solution, than when bound to, for example, an antibody, or when forming part of a protein (Stanfield, R.I. et al., (1990) *Science* 248, p712-719). Proteins in general have a well defined tertiary structure and perform their biological function only when adopting this structure. For example, the structure of the antibody D1.3 has been solved in the free form and when bound to antigen (Bhat, T.N. et al., (1990) *Nature* 347, p483-485). The gross structure of the protein is identical in each instance with only minor variations around the binding site for the antigen. Other proteins have more substantial conformation changes on binding of ligand, for instance the enzymes hexokinase and pyruvate dehydrogenase during their catalytic cycle, but they still retain their overall pattern of folding. This structural integrity is not confined to whole proteins, but is exhibited by protein domains. This leads to the concept of a folded unit which is part of a protein, often a domain, which has a well defined primary, secondary and tertiary structure and which retains the same overall folding pattern whether binding to a binding partner or not. The only gene sequence that Smith et al., described that was of sufficient size to encode a domain (a minimum of perhaps 50 amino acids) was a 335bp fragment of a  $\beta$ -galactosidase corresponding to nucleotides 861-1195 in the  $\beta$ -galactosidase gene sequence (Parmley, S. + Smith, G.P. 1988 *supra*). This would encode 112 amino acids of a much larger 380 amino acid domain. Therefore, prior to the present application, no substantially complete domain or folded unit had been displayed on phage. In these cases, although the infectivity of the virion was disrupted, the inserted sequences could be detected on the phage surface by use of e.g. antibodies.

The protein encoded by gene III has several domains (Pratt, D., et al., 1969 *Virology* 39:42-53., Grant, R.A.,

et al., 1981, *J. Biol. Chem.* 256: 539-546 and Armstrong, J., et al., *FEBS Lett.* 135: 167-172 1981.) including: (i) a signal sequence that directs the protein to the cell membrane and which is then cleaved off; (ii) a domain that anchors the mature protein into the bacterial cell membrane (and also the phage coat); and (iii) a domain that specifically binds to the phage receptor, the F-pilus of the host bacterium. Short sequences derived from protein molecules have been inserted into two places within the mature molecule (Smith, G., 1985 *supra*., and Parmley, S.F. and Smith G.P., 1988 *supra*.). Namely, into an inter-domain region and also between amino acids 2 and 3 at the N-terminus. The insertion sites at the N-terminus were more successful in maintaining the structural integrity of the gene III protein and displaying the peptides on the surface of the phage. By use of antisera specific for the peptides, the peptide inserted into this position was shown to be on the surface of the phage. Those authors were also able to purify the phage, using this property. However, the peptides expressed by the phage, did not possess measurable biological functions of their own.

Retaining the biological function of a molecule when it is expressed in a radically different context to its natural state is difficult. The demands on the structure of the molecule are heavy. In contrast, retaining the ability to be bound by specific antisera is a passive process which imposes far less rigorous demands on the structure of the molecule. For example, it is the rule rather than the exception that polyclonal antisera will recognise totally denatured, and biologically inactive, proteins on Western blots (see for example, Harlow, E. and Lane, D., *Antibodies*, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press 1988). Therefore, the insertion of peptides into a region that allows their structure to be probed with antisera teaches only that the region allows the inserted sequences to be exposed and does not teach that the region is suitable for the insertion of large sequences with demanding structural constraints for the display of a molecule with a biological or binding function. In particular, it does not teach that domains or folded units of proteins can be displayed from sequences inserted in this region.

This experience with Western blots is a graphic practical demonstration which shows that retaining the ability to be bound by specific antisera imposes far less rigorous demands on the structure of a polypeptide, than does folding for the retention of a biological function.

Studies have been carried out, in which *E. coli* have been manipulated to express the protein  $\beta$ -adrennergic receptor as a fusion with the outer membrane protein lamB. The  $\beta$ -adrennergic receptor was expressed in a



functional form as determined by the presence of binding activity. However, when an equivalent antibody fusion was made with lamB, the antibody fusion was toxic to the host cell.

The applicants have investigated the possibility of inserting the gene coding sequence for biologically active antibody fragments into the gene III region of fd to express a large fusion protein. As is apparent from the previous discussion, this approach makes onerous demands on the functionality of the fusion protein. The insertion is large, encoding antibody fragments of at least 100-200 amino acids; the antibody derived domain must fold efficiently and correctly to display antigen-binding; and most of the functions of gene III must be retained. The applicants approach to the construction of the fusion molecule was designed to minimise the risk of disrupting these functions. In an embodiment of the invention, the initial vector used was fd-tet (Zacher, A.N., et al., 1980, Gene 9, 127-140) a tetracycline resistant version of fd bacteriophage that can be propagated as a plasmid that confers tetracycline resistance to the infected *E. coli* host. The applicants chose to insert after the signal sequence of the fd gene III protein for several reasons. In particular, the applicants chose to insert after amino acid 1 of the mature protein to retain the context for the signal peptidase cleavage. To retain the structure and function of gene III itself, the majority of the original amino acids are synthesized after the inserted immunoglobulin sequences. The inserted immunoglobulin sequences were designed to include residues from the switch region that links VH-VL to CH1-CL (Lesk, A., and Chothis, C., Nature 335, 188-190, 1988).

Surprisingly, by manipulating gene III of bacteriophage fd, the present applicants have been able to construct a bacteriophage that displays on its surface large biologically functional antibody, enzyme, and receptor molecules whilst remaining intact and infectious. Furthermore, the phages bearing antibodies of desired specificity, can be selected from a background of phages not showing this specificity.

The sequences coding for a population of antibody molecules and for insertion into the vector to give expression of antibody binding functions on the phage surface can be derived from a variety of sources. For example, immunised or non-immunised rodents or humans, and from organs such as spleen and peripheral blood lymphocytes. The coding sequences are derived from these sources by techniques familiar to those skilled in the art (Orlandi, R., et al., 1989 supra; Larrick, J.W., et al., 1989 supra; Chiang, Y.L., et al., 1989 Bio Techniques 7, p. 360-366; Ward, E.S., et al., 1989 supra;

Sastry, L., et al., 1989 supra.) or by novel linkage strategies described in examples 14, 33, 40 and 42. Novel strategies are described in examples 7, 25, 33, 39 and 40 for displaying dimeric molecules eg Fab and Fv fragments on the surface of a phage. Each individual pAb in the resulting library of pAbs will express antibodies or antibody derived fragments that are monoclonal with respect to their antigen-binding characteristics.

The disclosure made by the present applicants is important and provides a significant breakthrough in the technology relating to the production of biological binding molecules, their fragments and derivatives by the use of recombinant methods.

In standard recombinant techniques for the production of antibodies, an expression vector containing sequences coding for the antibody polypeptide chains is used to transform e.g. *E. coli*. The antibody polypeptides are expressed and detected by use of standard screening systems. When the screen detects an antibody polypeptide of the desired specificity, one has to return to the particular transformed *E. coli* expressing the desired antibody polypeptide. Furthermore, the vector containing the coding sequence for the desired antibody polypeptide then has to be isolated for use from *E. coli* in further processing steps.

In the present invention however, the desired antibody polypeptide when expressed, is already packaged with its gene coding sequence. This means that when the an antibody polypeptide of desired specificity is selected, there is no need to return to the original culture for isolation of that sequence. Furthermore, in previous methods in standard recombinant techniques, each clone expressing antibody needs to be screened individually. The present application provides for the selection of clones expressing antibodies with desired properties and thus only requires screening of clones from an enriched pool.

Because a rDgp (eg a pAb) is a novel structure that displays a member of a specific binding pair (eg. an antibody of monoclonal antigen-binding specificity) at the surface of a relatively simple replicable structure also containing the genetic information encoding the member, rDgps eg pAbs, that bind to the complementary member of the specific binding pair (eg antigen) can be recovered very efficiently by either eluting off the complementary member using for example diethylamine, high salt etc and infecting suitable bacteria, or by denaturing the structure, and specifically amplifying the sequences encoding the member using PCR. That is, there is no necessity to refer back to the original bacterial clone that gave rise to the pAb.

For some purposes, for example immunoprecipitation



and some diagnostic tests, it is advantageous to use polyclonal antibodies or antibody fragments. The present invention allows this to be achieved by either selection of an enriched pool of pAbs with desired properties or by mixing individually isolated clones with desired properties. The antibodies or antibody fragments may then be expressed in soluble form if desired. Such a selected polyclonal pAb population can be grown from stocks of phage, bacteria containing phageids or bacteria expressing soluble fragments derived from the selected polyclonal population. Thus a reagent equivalent to a polyclonal antiserum is created which can be replicated and routinely manufactured in culture without use of animals.

#### SELECTION FORMATS AND AFFINITY MATURATION

Individual rcdps eg pAbs expressing the desired specificity eg for an antigen, can be isolated from the complex library using the conventional screening techniques (e.g. as described in Harlow, E., and Lane, D., 1988, supra Gherardi, E et al. 1990, J. Immunol. meth. 126 p61-68).

The applicants have also devised a series of novel selection techniques that are practicable only because of the unique properties of rcdps. The general outline of some screening procedures is illustrated in figure 2 using pAbs as an example type of rcdp.

The population/library of pAbs to be screened could be generated from immunised or other animals; or be created in vitro by mutagenising pre-existing phage antibodies (using techniques well-known in the art such as oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis (Sambrook, J., et al., 1989 Molecular Cloning a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press). This population can be screened in one or more of the formats described below with reference to figure 2, to derive those individual pAbs whose antigen binding properties are different from sample C.

#### Binding Elution

Figure 2(i) shows antigen (ag) bound to a solid surface (s) the solid surface (s) may be provided by a petri dish, chromatography beads, magnetic beads and the like. The population/library of pAbs is then passed over the ag, and those individuals p that bind are retained after washing, and optionally detected with detection system d. A detection system based upon anti-id antisera is illustrated in more detail below in example 4. If samples of bound population p are removed under increasingly stringent conditions, the binding affinity represented in each sample will increase. Conditions of increased stringency can be obtained, for example, by increasing the time of soaking or changing the pH of the soak solution, etc.

#### Competition

Referring to figure 2(ii) antigen ag can be bound to a solid support s and bound to saturation by the original binding molecule c. If a population of mutant pAb (or a set of unrelated pAbs) is offered to the complex, only those that have higher affinity for antigen than c will bind. In most examples, only a minority of population c will be displaced by individuals from population p. If c is a traditional antibody molecule, all bound material can be recovered and bound p recovered by infecting suitable bacteria and/or by use of standard techniques such as PCR.

An advantageous application is where ag is used as a receptor and c the corresponding ligand. The recovered bound population p is then related structurally to the receptor binding site/and or ligand. This type of specificity is known to be very useful in the pharmaceutical industry.

Another advantageous application is where ag is an antibody and c its antigen. The recovered bound population p is then an anti-idiotypic antibody which has numerous uses in research and the diagnostic and pharmaceutical industries.

At present it is difficult to select directly for anti-idiotypic antibodies. pAbs would give the ability to do this directly by binding pAb libraries (eg a naive library) to B cells (which express antibodies on their surface) and isolating those phage that bound well.

In some instances it may prove advantageous to pre-select population p. For example, in the anti-idiotypic example above, p can be absorbed against a related antibody that does not bind the antigen.

However, if c is a pAb, then either or both c and p can advantageously be marked in some way to both distinguish and select for bound p over bound c. This marking can be physical, for example, by pre-labelling p with biotin; or more advantageously, genetic. For example, c can be marked with an EcoB restriction site, whilst p can be marked with an EcoK restriction site (see Carter, P. et al., 1985, Nucl. Acids Res. 13, 4431-4443). When bound p+c are eluted from the antigen and used to infect suitable bacteria, there is restriction (and thus no growth) of population c (i.e. EcoB restricting bacteria in this example). Any phage that grew, would be greatly enriched for those individuals from p with higher binding affinities. Alternatively, the genetic marking can be achieved by marking p with new sequences, which can be used to specifically amplify p from the mixture using PCR.

Since the bound pAbs can be amplified using for example PCR or bacterial infection, it is also possible to recover the desired specificity even when insufficient

individuals are bound to allow detection via conventional techniques.

The preferred method for selection of a phage displaying a protein molecule with a desired specificity or affinity will often be elution from an affinity matrix with a ligand (eg example 21). Elution with increasing concentrations of ligand should elute phage displaying binding molecules of increasing affinity. However, when eg a pAb binds to its antigen with high affinity or avidity (or another protein to its binding partner) it may not be possible to elute the pAb from an affinity matrix with molecule related to the antigen. Alternatively, there may be no suitable specific eluting molecule that can be prepared in sufficiently high concentration. In these cases it is necessary to use an elution method which is not specific to eg the antigen-antibody complex. Some of the non-specific elution methods generally used reduce phage viability for instance, phage viability is reduced with time at pH12 (Rossomando, E.F. and Zinder N.D. J. Mol.Biol. 36 387-399 1968). There may be interactions between eg antibodies and affinity matrices which cannot be disrupted without completely removing phage infectivity. In these cases a method is required to elute phage which does not rely on disruption of eg the antibody - antigen interaction. A method was therefore devised which allows elution of bound pAbs under mild conditions (reduction of a dithiol group with dithiothreitol) which do not disrupt phage structure (example 47).

This elution procedure is just one example of an elution procedure under mild conditions. A particularly advantageous method would be to introduce a nucleotide sequence encoding amino acids constituting a recognition site for cleavage by a highly specific protease between the foreign gene inserted, in this instance a gene for an antibody fragment, and the sequence of the remainder of gene III. Examples of such highly specific proteases are Factor X and thrombin. After binding of the phage to an affinity matrix and elution to remove non-specific binding phage and weak binding phage, the strongly bound phage would be removed by washing the column with protease under conditions suitable for digestion at the cleavage site. This would cleave the antibody fragment from the phage particle eluting the phage. These phage would be expected to be infective, since the only protease site should be the one specifically introduced. Strongly binding phage could then be recovered by infecting eg. E.coli TGI calls.

An alternative procedure to the above is to take the affinity matrix which has retained the strongly bound pAb and extract the DNA, for example by boiling in SDS solution. Extracted DNA can then be used to directly

transform E.coli host cells or alternatively the antibody encoding sequences can be amplified, for example using PCR with suitable primers such as those disclosed herein, and then inserted into a vector for expression as a soluble antibody for further study or a pAb for further rounds of selection.

Another preferred method for selection according to affinity would be by binding to an affinity matrix containing low amounts of ligand.

If one wishes to select from a population of phages displaying a protein molecule with a high affinity for its ligand, a preferred strategy is to bind a population of phage to an affinity matrix which contains a low amount of ligand. There is competition between phage, displaying high affinity and low affinity proteins, for binding to the ligand on the matrix. Phage displaying high affinity protein is preferentially bound and low affinity protein is washed away. The high affinity protein is then recovered by elution with the ligand or by other procedures which elute the phage from the affinity matrix (example 35 demonstrates this procedure).

In summary then, for recovery of the packaged DNA from the affinity step, the package can be simply eluted, it can be eluted in the presence of a homologous sbp member which competes with said package for binding to a complementary sbp member; it could be removed by boiling, it could be removed by proteolytic cleavage of the protein; and other methods will be apparent to those skilled in the art eg. destroying the link between the substrate and complementary sbp member to release said packaged DNA and sbp member. At any rate, the objective is to obtain the DNA from the package so that it can be used directly or indirectly, to express the sbp member encoded thereby.

The efficiency of this selection procedure for pAbs and the ability to create very large libraries means that the immunisation techniques developed to increase the proportion of screened cells producing antibodies of interest will not be an absolute requirement. The technique allows the rapid isolation of binding specificities eg antigen-binding specificities, including those that would be difficult or even unobtainable by conventional techniques, for example, catalytic or anti-idiotypic antibodies. Removal of the animal altogether is now possible, once a complete library of the immune repertoire has been constructed.

The novel structure of the pAb molecule can be used in a number of other applications, some examples of which are: Signal Amplification

Acting as a novel molecular entity in itself, rpdps eg pAbs combine the ability to bind a specific molecule eg antigen with amplification, if the major coat protein

is used to attach another moiety. This moiety can be attached via immunological, chemical, or any other means and can be used, for example, to label the complex with detection reagents or cytotoxic molecules for use *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

#### Physical Detection

The size of the rdpbs eg pabs can be used as a marker particularly with respect to physical methods of detection such as electron microscopy and/or some biosensors, e.g. surface plasmon resonance.

#### Diagnostic Assays

The rdpbs eg pabs also have advantageous uses in diagnostic assays, particularly where separation can be effected using their physical properties for example centrifugation, filtration etc.

In order that the invention is more fully understood, embodiments will now be described in more detail by way of example only and not by way of limitation with reference to the figures described below.

Figure 1 shows the basic structure of the simplest antibody molecule IgG.

Figure 2 shows schematically selection techniques which utilise the unique properties of pabs; 2i) shows a binding/alution system; and 2ii) shows a competition system (p-pab; eg-antigen to which binding by pab is required; c-competitor population e.g. antibody, pab, ligand; s-substrate (e.g. plastic beads etc)); d-detection system.

Figure 3 shows the vector fd-tet and a scheme for the construction of vectors, fdTPs/Bs (for insertion of VH coding sequences) and fdTPs/Xh for the insertion of scFv coding sequences.

Figure 4 shows the nucleotide sequences for the oligonucleotides and vectors. All sequences are drawn 5' to 3' and are numbered according to Beck et al., 1978, Nucl. Acid Res., 5: 4495-4503. 4.1 shows the sequences of the oligonucleotides used for mutagenesis (oligo's 1 and 2) or sequencing (oligo 3). The sequences shown were synthesized on an Applied Biosystems, oligonucleotide synthesizer and are complementary to the single stranded form of fd-tet (they are in the anti-sense form with respect to gene III). 4.2 shows the sequences of the various constructs around the gene III insertion site. These sequences are drawn in the sense orientation with respect to gene III; (A) fd-tet (and fdTet) (B) fdTPs/Bs and (C) fdTPs/Xh. The key restriction enzyme sites are shown along with the immunoglobulin amino acids contributed by the vectors, (amino acid single letter code is used, see Harlow, E., and Lane, D., 1988 supra.).

Figure 5 shows the nucleotide and amino acid sequences for scFv in the vector scFvD1.3 myc. This gives the sequence of the anti-lysozyme single chain Fv

and surrounding sequences in scFvD1.3 myc, showing the N-terminal pel B signal peptide sequence and the C-terminal myc tag sequences (Harlow, E.S., et al., 1989, supra.). Also shown is the peptide sequence linking the VH and VL regions. The amino acid sequence is represented above the nucleotide sequence by the single letter code, see Harlow, E., and Lane, D., 1988 supra.

Figure 6 shows the binding of pabs to lysozyme and the effect of varying the amount of supernatant. Each point is the average of duplicate samples. Lysozyme was coated at 1 mg/ml in 50 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>.

Figure 7 shows the effect of varying the coating concentration of lysozyme or bovine serum albumin on the binding of pabs to lysozyme in graphical form. Each point is the average of duplicate samples.

Figure 8 shows the sequence around the cloning site in gene III of fd-CAT2. Restriction enzyme sites are shown as well as the amino acids encoded by antibody derived sequences. These are flanked at the 5' end by the gene III signal peptide and at the 3' end by 3 alanine residues (encoded by the Not I restriction site) and the remainder of the mature gene III protein. The arrow shows the cleavage site for cutting of the signal peptide.

Figure 9 shows the binding of pab (1.3) to lysozyme. Binding of phage as detected by ELISA to (a) hen egg-white lysozyme (HEL) (b) turkey egg-white lysozyme (TEL), (c) human lysozyme (HUL), (d) bovine serum albumin (BSA). A further control of (e) fdTPs/Bs to HEL.

Figure 10 shows a map of FabsD1.3 in pUC19.

Figure 11 shows the ELISA results providing a comparison of lysozyme-binding by phage-Fab and phage-scFv. Vector-fdCAT2 (example 5); fdscFv(OX)-pabN011 (Example 9); fdVHCH1 (D1.3)-grown in normal cells (1.e. no L chain, see example 7); fdFab(D1.3) 1.e. fdVHCH1 (D1.3) grown in cells containing D1.3 L chain; fdscFv (D1.3)-pabD1.3.

Figure 12 shows oligonucleotide probing of affinity purified phage. 10<sup>12</sup> phage in the ratio of 1 pab (D1.3) in 4 x 10<sup>6</sup> fdTPs/Bs phages were affinity purified and probed with an oligonucleotide specific for pab (D1.3) A in a filter after one round of affinity purification (900 colonies total) and B in a filter after two rounds (372 colonies total).

Figure 13 shows the sequence of the anti-oxazolone antibody fragment N011 scFv. The sequence contributed by the linker is shown in the lower case. The sequence for VH is before the linker sequence and the sequence for VL is after the linker.

Figure 14 shows the ELISA results for binding pab N011 and pab D1.3 and vector fdTPs/Xh to opoosified

antigens.

Figure 15 shows the sequence surrounding the phoA insertion in fd-phoA166. The restriction sites used for cloning are shown, as well as the amino acids encoded by phoA around the insertion site. The first five amino acids of the mature fusion come from gene III.

Figure 16(1) shows the structure of gene III and the native BamHI site into which a scFv coding sequence was inserted in example 13 and figure 16(2) shows the natural peptide linker sites A and B for possible insertion of scFv coding sequences.

Figure 17 shows schematically the protocol for PCR assembly of mouse VH and VLK repertoires for phage display described in example 14.

Figure 18 shows examples of the final products obtained with the procedure of example 14. Lanes a and b show the products of the initial PCR using heavy and light chain primers respectively; lane c shows the complete assembled 700bp product before final digestion with NotI and ApaLI; M1, M2 markers #174 Hae III digest and 123 base pair ladder (BRL Limited, P.O. Box 35, Washington Road, Paisley, Scotland) respectively.

Figure 19 shows the binding of 125I-PDGF-BB to fd h-PDGF-BB in immunoprecipitation assay and comparison to fdrPs/Bs and no phage control; binding is expressed as a percentage of the total 125I-PDGF-BB added to the incubation.

Figure 20 shows the displacement of 125I-PDGF-BB bound to fd-h-PDGF-BB phage using unlabelled PDGF-BB measured using an immunoprecipitation assay. Binding is expressed as a percentage of the total 125I-PDGF-BB added to the incubation.

Figure 21 shows the displacement of 125I-PDGF-BB bound to fd-h-PDGF-BB phage using unlabelled PDGF-BB measured using an immunoprecipitation assay. Non-specific binding of 125I-PDGF-BB to vector phage fdrPs/Bs in the absence of added unlabelled PDGF was deducted from each point.

Figure 22 shows the results of an ELISA of lysozyme binding by pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 phagemid in comparison with pCAT-3 vector (both rescued by M13KO7) and fdCAT2 scFv D1.3 as described in example 17. The ELISA was performed as described in example 6 with modifications detailed in example 18.

Figure 23 shows the digestion pattern seen when individual clones, selected at random from a library of single chain Fv antibody genes derived from an immunised mouse, are digested with BstNI.

Figure 24 shows VH and VK gene sequences derived from the combinatorial library in example 21 and the hierarchical library in example 22.

Figure 25 shows a matrix of ELISA signals for clones

derived from random combinatorial library. Designation of the clones is as in figure 24. The number of clones found with each combination is shown by the numerals.

Figure 26 shows a) the phagemid pHEN1 a derivative of pUC119 described in example 24; and b) the cloning sites in the phagemid pHEN1.

Figure 27. The antibody constructs cloned into fd-CAT2 and pHEN1 for display on the surface of phage. Constructs I, II, III and IV were cloned into both fd-CAT2 (as ApaLI-NotI fragments) and pHEN1 (as SfiI-NotI fragments) and pHEN1 (as SfiI-NotI fragments). All the constructs contained the heavy chain (VH) and light chain (VK) variable regions of the mouse anti-phox antibody NQ10.12.5. The constant domains were human CK and CH1 (γ1 isotype).

Figure 28. Three ways of displaying antibody fragments on the surface of phage by fusion to gene III protein.

Figure 29. Western blot of supernatant taken from pHEN1-II(+) or pHEN1(-) cultures in E.coli HB2151, showing secretion of Fab fragment from pHEN1-II only. The anti-human Fab detects both H and L chain. Due to the attached c-myc tag, the L chain, highlighted by both anti-c-myc tag and anti-human CK antisera, is slightly larger (calculated Mr 24625) than the H chain (calculated Mr 23145).

Figure 30 is a plot showing the effect of lysozyme dilution on ratio of ELISA signals obtained using pAbD1.3 or soluble scFv D1.3.

Figure 31 is a plot showing the effect of lysozyme dilution on ELISA signals obtained using fdrscFvD1.3 and soluble scFvD1.3.

Figure 32 is a plot showing positive results from an ELISA screen of phage displaying scFv fragments derived from the cell line 013 which express a monoclonal antibody directed against oestriol.

Figure 33 is a plot showing positive results from an ELISA screen of phage displaying scFv fragments derived from the cell line 014 which express a monoclonal antibody directed against oestriol.

Figure 34 is a Western Blot showing expression of the alkaline phosphatase-gene 3 fusion. 10μl of 50 fold concentrate of each phage sample was detected on western blots with either anti-gene 3 antiserum (e-f) or with anti-alkaline phosphatase antiserum (c-f)

a) fd-phoA166 grown in TGI cells

b) fd-phoA166 grown in KS272 cells

c) fdCAT2 grown in TGI cells

d) fdCAT2 grown in TGI cells, mixed with 13 ng of

purified alkaline phosphatase

e) fd-phoA166 grown in TGI cells

f) fdCAT2 grown in TGI cells.

37

Figure 35 is a Western Blot showing ultrafiltration of phage-enzyme 100 $\mu$ l of 50 fold concentrate of phage (representing 5 $\mu$ l of culture supernatant) was centrifuged through ultrafiltration membranes with nominal molecular weight retention of 300,000 daltons. Western blots of flow through and retentate fractions were detected with anti-alkaline phosphatase antiserum. The equivalent of 800 $\mu$ l of original culture supernatant was run on the gel.

A. Phage were grown in TGI cells. a) fd-phoAla166 before ultrafiltration (short exposure). b) fd-phoAla166 before ultrafiltration. c) fd-phoAla166 material retained on ultrafiltration membranes.

B. Phage were grown in RS272 cells. a) fd-phoAla166 before ultrafiltration. b) fd-phoAla166 material retained on ultrafiltration membranes. c) fdCAT2. d) fdCAT2 mixed with purified alkaline phosphatase before ultrafiltration. e) Retentate from sample d. f) Flow through from sample d.

Figure 36 Electrophoresis of samples from stages of a Fab assembly. Samples from different stages in the PCR Fab assembly process described in example 33 were subjected to electrophoresis on a 1% TAE-agarose gel. Samples from a comparable scFv assembly process (as in example 14) are shown for comparison. Samples left to right are:

M	Markers
VHCH1	sequences encoding VHCH1 domains amplified by PCR
VKCK	sequences encoding VKCK domains amplified by PCR
-L	Fab assembly reaction performed in absence of linker
+L	Fab PCR assembly reaction product VHCH1 plus VKCK plus linker
M	Markers
VK	sequences encoding VK domain amplified by PCR
VL	sequences encoding VH domains amplified by PCR
-L	scFv assembly reaction in absence of linker
+L	scFv assembly reaction in presence of linker
M	Markers

Figure 37. Comparison of ELISA signals with scFv D1.3 cloned in fd-CAT2 (fd) or pCAT-3. pCAT-3 scFv1.3 has been rescued with M13KO7 (KO7). M13KO7AgIII No 3 (gIII No 3) or M13KO7 gIIINo 2 (gIIINo2). Phage antibodies are compared at 10 times (10x) 1 times (1x) or 0.1 times

38

(0.1x) concentrations relative to concentration in the supernatant after overnight growth. The fdCAT2 and pCAT-3 non-recombinant vector signals were <0.01 at 10x concentration. M13KO7 gIIINo 1 did not rescue at all, as judged by no signal above background in this ELISA.

Figure 38. Western blot of PEG3 precipitated phage used in ELISA probed with anti-g3p. Free g3p and the g3p-scFvD1.3 fusion bands are arrowed.

Sample 1 - fd scFvD1.3

Sample 2 - pCAT3 vector

Sample 3 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 rescued with M13KO7, no IPTG

Sample 4 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 rescued with M13KO7, 50 $\mu$ M IPTG

Sample 5 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 rescued with M13KO7, 100 $\mu$ M IPTG

Sample 6 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 rescued with M13KO7 gIIINo3

Sample 7 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 (no IPTG)

Sample 8 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 rescued with M13KO7 gIIINo3

Sample 9 - pCAT3 scFvD1.3 (no IPTG)

Panel A. Samples contain the equivalent of 8 $\mu$ l of phagemid culture supernatant per track, and 80 $\mu$ l of the fd supernatant (10-fold lower phage yield than the phagemid). Panel B phagemid samples are those used in panel A at a five-fold higher sample loading (equivalent to 40 $\mu$ l of culture supernatant per track) to enable visualisation of the fusion band in samples rescued with parental M13KO7.

Figure 39 is a graph showing fdCAT2scFvD1.3 enrichment produced from a mixture of fdCAT2scFvD1.3 and fdCAT2TRP4 by one round of panning.

Figure 40 is a graph showing fdCAT2scFvD1.3 enrichment produced from a mixture of fdCAT2scFvD1.3 and fdCAT2TRP4 by one round of panning.

Figure 41. Western blot of phage proteins of fdCAT2(1) and fd-tet-SNase(2) with anti-g3p antiserum. Marker molecular weights bands are indicated (kD).

Figure 42. Nuclease assay of soluble SNase (3 ng)(A-1), fd-tet-SNase(4 x 10<sup>9</sup>tu, (B-1), fd-CAT2(2 x 10<sup>10</sup>tu)(C-1) and of a PEG-precipitated fdCAT2 and SNase mixture(2 x 10<sup>10</sup>tu and 0.7 $\mu$ g)(D-1) in a 10-fold dilution series (1 to 3 or 4). Marker (M) is a HindIII digest of  $\lambda$ -DNA(New England Biolabs).

Figure 43. ELISA signals obtained with fd-tet, fd-CD4-VI and fd-CD4-VI2. In each group of three, the samples are left to right: phage concentrate(SN); phage concentrate plus soluble CD4(SN + scd4); phage concentrate plus gp120(SN + gp120).

Figure 44. shows the DNA sequence of scFv B18 (anti-NP).

Figure 45 shows a map of the insert of sequences encoding scFvD1.3 present in fd-tet scFvD1.3 (example 39). The designates the ribosome binding site. Gene III is now shown in its full length.

Figure 46. shows an ELISA assay of phages displaying

39

FvD1.3 or scFvD1.3 by binding to plates coated with lysogyme. Signals obtained at various dilution factors are shown. FvD1.3 (AS-Stuffer) which does not express Fv was used as a control.

Figure 47. shows a schematic representation of steps involved in the PCR assembly of nucleotide sequences encoding human Fab fragments. Details are in example 40.

Figure 48. shows A. a map of plasmid pM1-FabD1.3 which is used for the expression of soluble human Fab fragments and as a template for the synthesis of linker DNA for Fab assembly. B. a schematic representation of sequences encoding a Fab construct. C. The sequence of DNA template for the synthesis of linker DNA for Fab assembly.

Figure 49. shows a schematic representation of steps involved in the PCR assembly of nucleotide sequences encoding human scFv fragments. Details are in example 42.

Figure 50. ELISA assay of phage antibodies using plates coated with turkey egg lysogyme. Two clones B1 and A4 are shown derived by mutagenesis and selection from pABD1.3 (example 45). Concentration (x axis) refers to the concentration of phage for each sample relative to the concentration in culture supernatant. B1 has raised binding to turkey egg lysogyme compared to D1.3. A4 has reduced binding to hen egg lysogyme compared to D1.3.

Figure 51. ELISA of phage antibodies binding to HEL and FcL. Clone 1 is fdcAT2scFvD1.3. Clones 2 to 10 were obtained from the library (example 46) after selection. The background values as defined by binding of these clones to BSA were subtracted.

Figure 52. shows the DNA sequence of the light chains D1.3 M1F and M21 derived by selection from a hierarchical library in example 46.

Figure 53 shows a Fv lambda expression vector (example 48) derived from pUC119. It contains the rearranged lambdaBd1 gamma line gene. The heavy and light chain cassettes each contain a ribosome binding site upstream of the pel B leader (restriction sites shown as: H-Hind III; Sp-SphI; B-BamHI, E-EcoRI).

#### Materials and Methods

The following procedures used by the present applicants are described in Sambrook, J. et al., 1989 supra.: restriction digestion, ligation, preparation of competent cells (Hanahan method), transformation, analysis of restriction enzyme digestion products on agarose gels, purification of DNA using phenol/chloroform, 5'-end labelling of oligonucleotides, filter screening of bacterial colonies, preparation of 2xTY medium and plates, preparation of tetracycline stock solutions, PAGE of proteins, preparation of phosphate buffered saline.

40

All enzymes were supplied by New England Biolabs (CP Laboratories, PO Box 22, Bishop's Stortford, Herts., England) and were used according to manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise stated.

The vector fd-tet (Zachar, A.N. et al., 1980, supra) was obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC No. 37000) and transformed into competent TGI cells (genotype: K12<sup>+</sup> (lac-pro), sup E, thi, hsdR5/F<sup>+</sup> trd36, pro<sup>+</sup>A+B<sup>+</sup>, lac I<sup>q</sup>, lac O<sup>u</sup>15).

Viral particles were prepared by growing TGI cells containing the desired construct in 10 to 100 mls 2xTY medium with 15 µg/ml tetracycline for 16-24 hours. The culture supernatant was collected by centrifugation for 10 mins at 10,000 rpm in an 8 x 50 ml rotor, Sorval RC-5B centrifuge. Phage particles were precipitated by adding 1/5th volume 20% polyethylene glycol (PEG)/2.5M NaCl and leaving at 4°C for 1 hour. These were spun for 15 minutes as described above and the pellets resuspended in 10 mM Tris/HCl pH 8, 1mM EDTA to 1/100th of the original volume. Residual bacteria and undissolved material were removed by spinning for 2 minutes in a microcentrifuge. Single stranded DNA for mutagenesis or sequencing was prepared from concentrated phage according to Sambrook, J., et al., 1989, supra.

#### Index of Examples

##### Example 1 Design of Insertion Point Linkers and Construction of Vectors

This example covers the construction of two derivatives of the phage vector fd-tet: a) fdTPS/BS for the insertion of VH coding sequences; and b) fdTPS/Xh for the insertion of scFv coding sequences. The derivative vectors have a new BstXI site for insertion of sequences.

##### Example 2 Insertion of Immunoglobulin Fv Domain into Phage

This example covers the insertion of scFv coding sequences derived from an anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3 into fdTPS/Xh to give the construct fdcAT2scFvD1.3.

##### Example 3 Insertion of Immunoglobulin VH Domain into Phage

This example covers the insertion of VH coding sequences derived from an anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3 into fdTPS/BS to give the construct fdcAT2scFvD1.3.

##### Example 4 Analysis of Binding Specificity of Phage Antibodies

This example investigates the binding specificities of the constructs fdcAT2scFvD1.3 and fdcAT2scFvD1.3.

##### Example 5 Construction of fdcAT2

This example covers the construction of the derivative fdcAT2 of the phage vector fdTPS/Xh. The derivative has restriction sites for enzymes that cut DNA infrequently.

Example 6 Specific Binding of Phage Antibody (pAb) to Antigen

This example shows the binding of pAb fdtacFvD1.3 to lysozyme by ELISA.

5 Example 7 Expression of FabD1.3

This example concerns the display of an antibody Fab fragment at the phage surface. The VH-CH1 chain is expressed by fdcAT2. The VL-CL chain is expressed by pUC19 in a bacterial host cell also infected with fdcAT2.

10 Example 8 Isolation of Specific, Desired Phage from a Mixture of Vector Phage

This example shows how a phage (e.g. fdtacFvD1.3) displaying a binding molecule can be isolated from vector phage by affinity techniques.

15 Example 9 Construction of pAb Expressing Anti-Hapten Activity

This example concerns the insertion of scFv coding sequences derived from the anti-oxazolone antibody NQ11 into fdtRPs/Xh to generate the construct pAbNQ11. The example shows the binding of pAbNQ11 to oxazolone by ELISA.

20 Example 10 Enrichment of pAbD1.3 from Mixtures of other pAbs by Affinity Purification

This example shows how a phage (eg. pAbD1.3) displaying one sort of binding molecule can be isolated from phage (e.g. pAbNQ11) displaying another sort of binding molecule by affinity techniques.

25 Example 11 Insertion of a Gene Encoding an Enzyme (Alkaline Phosphatase) into fdcAT2

This example concerns the invention of coding sequences for an enzyme into the vector fdcAT2 to give the phage enzyme, fdpho1a116.

30 Example 12 Measuring Enzyme Activity Phage - Enzyme

This example shows the functionality of an enzyme (alkaline phosphatase) when displayed at the phage surface (fdpho1a116).

35 Example 13 Insertion of Binding Molecules into Alternative Sites in the Phage

This example covers the insertion of scFv coding sequences derived from a) the anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3; and b) the anti-oxazolone antibody NQ11 into a BamHI site of fdtRPs/Xh to give the constructs fdtBamI having an NQ11 insert.

40 Example 14 PCR Assembly of Mouse VH and VLK Repertoires for Phage Display

This example concerns a system for the display on phage of all VH and VLK repertoires encoded by a mouse.

The system involves the following steps. 1) Preparation of RNA from spleen. 2) Preparation of cDNA from the RNA 3) Use of primers specific for antibody sequences to PCR amplify all VH and VLK cDNA coding sequences 4) Use of PCR to create a linker molecule from linking pairs of VH

and VLK sequences 5) Use of PCR to assemble continuous DNA molecules each comprising a VH sequence, a linker and a VLK sequence. The specific VH/VLK combination is randomly derived 6) Use of PCR to introduce restriction sites.

5 Example 15. Insertion of the Extracellular Domain of a Human Receptor for Platelet Derived Growth Factor (PDGF) Isoform BB into fdcAT2

This example concerns the insertion of coding sequences for the extracellular domain of the human receptor for PDGF into the vector fdcAT2 to give the construct fdtPDGFR.

10 Example 16. Binding of 125 I-PDGF-BB to the Extracellular Domain of the Human Receptor for PDGF Isoform BB Displayed on the Surface of fd Phage. Measured using an Immunoprecipitation Assay.

This example shows that the human receptor PDGF Isoform BB is displayed on the surface of the phage in a form which has the ability to bind its ligand.

15 Example 17. Construction of Phagemid Containing Gene III Fused with the Coding Sequence for a Binding Molecule.

This example concerns the construction of two phagemids based on pUC119 which separately contain gene III from fdcAT2 and the gene III scFv fusion fdcAT2scFvD1.3 to generate pCAT2 and pCAT3 scFvD1.3 respectively.

20 Example 18. Rescue of Anti-Lysozyme Antibody Specificity from pCAT3scFvD1.3 by H13K07

This example describes the rescue of the coding sequence for the gene IIIscFv fusion from pCAT3scFvD1.3 by H13K07 helper phage growth, phage were shown to be displaying scFv anti-lysozyme activity by ELISA.

25 Example 19. Transformation Efficiency of pCAT-3 and pCAT-3 scFvD1.3 Phagemids

This example compared the efficiency of the phagemids pUC119, pCAT-3 and pCAT3scFvD1.3 and the phage fdcAT2 to transform E.coli.

30 Example 20 PCR Assembly of a Single Chain Fv Library from an Immunised Mouse

This example concerns a system for the display on phage of scFv (comprising VH and VL) from an immunised mouse using the basic technique outlined in example 14 (cDNA preparation and PCR assembly of the mouse VH and VLK repertoires) and ligating the PCR assembled sequences into fdcAT2 to create a phage library of 10<sup>5</sup> clones. Testing of 500 clones showed that none showed specificity against phox.

35 Example 21. Selection of Antibodies Specific for 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone from a Repertoire from an Immunised Mouse.

This example shows that phage grown from the library established in example 20 can be subjected to affinity selection using phox to select those phage displaying



scFv with the desired specificity.

Example 22. Generation of Further Antibody Specificities by the Assembly of Hierarchical Libraries.

This example concerns the construction of hierarchical libraries in which a given VH sequence is combined with the complete VLK repertoire and a given VLK sequence is combined with the complete VH repertoire and selection from these libraries of novel VH and VL pairings.

Example 23. Selection of Antibodies Displayed on Bacteriophage with Different Affinities for 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone using Affinity Chromatography

This example concerns the separation by affinity techniques of phages displaying scFv fragments with differing binding affinities for a given antigen.

Example 24. Construction of Phagemid PHEN1 for the Expression of Antibody Fragments Expressed on the surface of Bacteriophage following Superinfection

This example concerns the construction of the phagemid PHEN1 derived from pUC119. PHEN1 has the features shown in Fig. 26.

Example 25. Display of Single Chain Fv and Fab Fragments Derived from the Anti-Oxazolone Antibody NQ 10.12.5 on Bacteriophage fd using PHEN1 and fdCAT2.

This example describes the display of scFv and Fab fragment with a specificity against phox on the surface of a bacteriophage. For display of scFv the phagemid PHEN1 comprises the sequences encoding scFv (VH and VL) for rescue by either the phages VSM13 or fdCAT2. For display of Fab the phage fdCAT2 comprises the sequence for either the H or L chain as a fusion with g3p and the phagemid PHEN1 comprises the sequence for the appropriate H or L chain partner.

Example 26. Rescue of Phagemid Encoding a Gene III Protein Fusion with Antibody Heavy or Light Chains by Phage Encoding the Complementary Antibody Displayed on Phage and the Use of this Technique to make Dual Combinatorial Libraries

This example covers the use of phage antibodies encoding the antibody heavy or light chain to rescue a phagemid encoding a gene 3 protein fusion with the complementary chain and the assay of Fab fragments displayed on phage in ELISA. The use of this technique in the preparation of a dual combinatorial library is discussed.

Example 27. Induction of Soluble scFv and Fab Fragments using Phagemid PHEN1

This example covers the generation of soluble scFv and Fab fragments from gene III fusions with sequences encoding these fragments by expression of clones in PHEN1 in an E.coli strain which does not suppress amber mutations.

Example 28. Increased Sensitivity in ELISA of Lysozyme

using fdscFvD1.3 as Primary Antibody compared to Soluble scFvD1.3

This example covers the use of fdscFvD1.3 in ELISA showing that lower amounts of lysozyme can be detected with phage antibody fdscFvD1.3 than with soluble scFvD1.3.

Example 29. Direct Rescue and Expression of Mouse Monoclonal Antibodies as Single Chain Fv Fragments on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd

This example covers the display on phage as functional scFv fragments of two clones directly derived from calls expressing monoclonal antibodies directed against opstrinol. Both clones were established to be functional using ELISA.

Example 30. Kinetic Properties of Alkaline Phosphatase Displayed on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd

This example concerns the demonstration that the kinetic properties of an enzyme, alkaline phosphatase, displayed on phage are qualitatively similar to those of the same enzyme when in solution.

Example 31. Demonstration using Ultrafiltration that Cloned Alkaline Phosphatase Behaves as Part of the Virus Particle

This example concerns the construction of the phage enzyme fdphoAyl66 and the demonstration that both the fusion protein made and the catalytic activity observed derive from the phage particle.

Example 32. Affinity Chromatography of Phage Alkaline Phosphatase

This example concerns the binding of alkaline phosphatase displayed on phage to an arsenate-Sepharose affinity column and specific elution of these phage using the reaction product, phosphate.

Example 33. PCR Assembly of DNA Encoding the Fab Fragment of an Antibody Directed against Oxazolone

This example covers the construction of a DNA insert encoding a Fab fragment by separate amplification of heavy and light chain DNA sequences followed by assembly. The construct was then inserted into the phage vector fdCAT2 and the phagemid vector PHEN1 and the Fab fragment displayed on the surface was shown to be functional.

Example 34. Construction of a Gene III Deficient Helper Phage

This example describes the construction of a helper phage derived from H13KO7 by deleting sequences in gene III. Rescue of pCAT3-scFvD1.3 is described. The scFvD1.3 is expressed at a high level as a fusion using the deletion phage, equivalent to expression using fdCAT2-scFvD1.3.

Example 35. Selection of bacteriophage expressing scFv fragments directed against lysozyme from mixtures according to affinity using a panning procedure



This example concerns the selection of bacteriophage according to the affinity of the scFv fragment directed against lysozyme which is expressed on their surface. The phage of different affinities were bound to Petri dishes coated with lysozyme and, following washing, bound phage eluted using triethylamine. Conditions were found where substantial enrichment could be obtained for a phage with a 5-fold higher affinity than the phage with which it was mixed.

Example 36 Expression of Catalytically Active Staphylococcal Nuclease on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd

This example concerns the construction of a phage enzyme which expresses Staphylococcal nuclease and the demonstration that the phage enzyme retains nuclease activity.

Example 37 Display of the Two Amino-terminal Domains of Human CD4 on the Surface of fd Phage

This example covers the cloning of genes for domains of CD4, a cell surface receptor and member of the immunoglobulin superfamily, into bacteriophage fd. The receptor is shown to be functional on the surface of phage by binding to the HIV protein gp120.

Example 38 Generation and Selection of Mutants of an Anti-4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenylacetic acid (NP) Antibody expressed on Phage using Mutator strains

This example covers the introduction of mutations into a gene for an antibody cloned in phage by growth of the phage in strains which randomly mutate DNA due to defects in DNA replication. Several mutations are introduced into phage which can then be selected from parent phage.

Example 39 Expression of a Fv Fragment on the Surface of Bacteriophage by Non-Covalent Association of VH and VL domains

This example shows that functional Fv fragments can be expressed on the surface of bacteriophage by non-covalent association of VH and VL domains. The VH domain is expressed as a gene III fusion and the VL domain as a soluble polypeptide. Sequences allowing expression of these domains from the anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3 in this form were introduced into phage and the resulting displayed Fv fragment shown to be functional by ELISA.

Example 40 A PCR Based Technique for one step Cloning of Human V-genes as Fab Constructs

This example gives methods for the assembly of Fab fragments from genes for antibodies. Examples are given for genes for antibodies directed against Rhesus-D in a human hybridoma and a polyclonal lymphoblastic cell line.

Example 41 Selection of Phage Displaying a Human Fab Fragment directed against the Rhesus-D Antigen by binding to Cells displaying the Rhesus D Antigen on their surface

This example concerns the construction of, and display of phage antibodies from, a phagemid encoding a human Fab fragment directed against the Rhesus D antigen. Phage displaying this antigen were then affinity selected from a background of phage displaying scFvD1.3 anti-lysozyme on the basis of binding to Rhesus-D positive red blood cells.

Example 42 A PCR Based Technique for One Step Cloning of Human scFv Constructs

This example describes the generation of libraries of scFv fragments derived from an unimmunized human. Examples are given of the preparation for phage display of libraries in phagemids of scFv fragments derived from IgG and IgM sequences.

Example 43 Isolation of Binding Activities from a Library of scFvs from an Unimmunized Human

This example describes the isolation, from the library of scFv fragments derived from IgM genes of an unimmunized human, of clones for phage antibodies directed against BSA, lysozyme and oxazolone. Selection was by panning or affinity chromatography and analysis of binding specificity by ELISA. Sequencing of the clones showed them to be of human origin.

Example 44 Rescue of human IgM library using helper phage lacking gene 3 (g3)

This example covers the isolation, from the library of scFv fragments of unimmunized human IgM genes, of clones of phage antibodies of clones for phage antibodies specific for thyroglobulin and oxazolone. In this example rescue was with M13K07gIII No3 (NCTC12478), a helper phage defective in gene III. Fewer rounds of selection appeared necessary for a phagemid library rescued with this phage compared to one rescued with M13K07.

Example 45 Alteration of Fine Specificity of scFvD1.3 displayed on Phage by Mutagenesis and Selection on Immobilized Turkey Lysozyme

This example covers the in vitro mutagenesis of pCARSscFvD1.3 by replacement, with random amino acids, of residues known to be of importance in the preferential recognition of hen egg lysozyme over turkey egg lysozyme by scFvD1.3. Following selection for phage antibodies recognizing turkey egg lysozyme by affinity chromatography, clones were analysed for specificity by ELISA. Two groups of clones were found with more equal recognition of hen and turkey lysozymes, one with increased ELISA signal with the turkey enzyme and one with reduced signal for the hen enzyme.

Example 46 Modification of the Specificity of an Antibody by Replacement of the VLK Domain by a VLK Library derived from an Unimmunised Mouse

This example shows that replacement of the VL domain

47

of scFvD1.3 specific for hen eggwhite lysozyme (HEL) with a library of VL domains allows selection of scFv fragments which bind also to turkey eggwhite lysozyme (TEL). The scFv fragments were displayed on phage and selection by panning on tubes coated with TEL. Analysis by ELISA showed clones with enhanced binding to TEL compared to HEL. Those with highest binding to TEL were sequenced.

Example 47 Selection of a Phage Antibody Specificity by Binding to an Antigen Attached to Magnetic Beads. Use of a Cleavable Reagent to allow Elution of Bound Phage under Mild Conditions

This examples covers the use of a cleavable bond in the affinity selection method to allow release of bound phage under mild conditions. pAbN011 was enriched approximately 600 fold from a mixture with pAbD1.3 by selection using biotinylated Ox-BSA bound to magnetic beads. The cleavage of a bond between BSA and the biotin allows elution of the phage.

Example 48 Use of Cell Selection to provide an Enriched Pool of Antigen Specific Antibody Genes. Application to Reducing the Complexity of Repertoires of Antibody Fragments Displayed on the Surface of Bacteriophage

This example covers the use of cell selection to produce an enriched pool of genes encoding antibodies directed against 4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenylacetic acid and describes how this technique could be used to reduce the complexity of antibody repertoires displayed on the surface of bacteriophages.

Example 1

Design of Insertion Point Linkers and Construction of Vectors

The vector fd-tet has two BstEII restriction sites flanking the tetracycline resistance gene (fig 3). Since the strategy for inserting the VH fragments was to ligate them into a newly inserted BstEII site within gene III, it was advantageous to delete the original BstEII sites from fd-tet. This was achieved by digesting fd-tet with the restriction enzyme BstEII, filling-in the 5' overhangs and re-ligating to generate the vector fdT08st. Digestion of fd-tet with BstEII (0.5 units/ $\mu$ l) was carried out in 1x KGB buffer (100 mM potassium glutamate, 23 mM Tris-acetate (pH 7.5), 10 mM magnesium acetate, 50  $\mu$ g/ml bovine serum albumin, 0.5 mM dithiothreitol (Sambrook, J., et al., 1989, supra.) with DNA at a concentration of 25 ng/ $\mu$ l. The 5' overhang was filled in, using 2x KGB buffer, 250  $\mu$ M each dNTP's (Pharmacia Ltd., Pharmacia House, Midsummer Boulevard, Milton Keynes, Bucks., UK.) and Klenow Fragment (Amersham International, Lincoln Place, Green End, Aylesbury, Bucks., UK) at 0.04 units/ $\mu$ l. After incubating for 1 hour at room temperature, DNA was extracted with

48

phenol/chloroform and precipitated with ethanol.

Ligations were carried out at a DNA concentration of 50ng/ $\mu$ l. Ligations were transformed into competent TGI cells and plated onto TY plates supplemented with 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline. This selects for vectors where the gene for tetracycline resistance protein has reinserted into the vector during the ligation step. Colonies were picked into 25 mls of 2xTY medium supplemented with 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline and grown overnight at 37°C.

Double stranded DNA was purified from the resulting clones using the Gene-clean II kit (Bio101 Inc., PO Box 2284, La Jolla, California, 92038-2284, USA.) and according to the small scale rapid plasmid DNA isolation procedure described therein. The orientation of 5' of the resulting clones was checked using the restriction enzymes ClaI. A clone was chosen which gave the same pattern of restriction by ClaI as fd-tet, but which had no BstEII sites.

In vitro mutagenesis of fdT08st was used to generate vectors having appropriate restriction sites that facilitate cloning of antibody fragments downstream of the gene III signal peptide and in frame with the gene III coding sequence. The oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis system version 2 (Amersham International) was used with oligo 1 (figure 4) to create fdTPs/Bs (to facilitate cloning of VH fragments). The sequence of fdTPs/Bs (figure 4) was confirmed using the sequence version 2.0 kit (USB Corp., PO Box 22400, Cleveland, Ohio, 44122, USA.) with oligo 3 (figure 4) as a primer. A second vector fdTPs/Xh (to facilitate cloning of single chain Fv fragments) was generated by mutagenising fdTPs/Bs with oligo 2 according to the method of Venkitesan, A.R., Nucl. Acid Res. 17, p 3314. The sequence of fdTPs/Xh (figure 4) was confirmed using the sequence version 2.0 kit (USB Corp.) with oligo 3 as a primer.

Clearly, alternative constructions will be apparent to those skilled in the art. For example, M13 and/or its host bacteria could be modified such that its gene III could be disrupted without the onset of excessive cell death; this modified fd gene III, or other modified protein, could be incorporated into a plasmid containing a single stranded phage replication origin, such as pUC19, superinfection with modified phage, such as X07 would then result in the encapsulation of the phage antibody genome in a coat partially derived from the helper phage and partly from the phage antibody gene III construct.

The detailed construction of a vector such as fdTPs/Bs is only one way of achieving the end of a phage antibody. For example, techniques such as sticky feet cloning/mutagenesis (Clackson, T. and Winter, G. 1989

Nucl. Acids. Res., 17, p 10163-10170) could be used to avoid use of restriction enzyme digests and/or ligation steps.

#### Example 2.

##### Insertion of Immunoglobulin Fv Domain into Phage

The plasmid scFv D1.3 myc (gift from G. Winter and A. Griffiths) contains VH and VL sequences from the antibody D1.3 fused via a peptide linker sequence to form a single chain Fv version of antibody D1.3. The sequence of the scFv and surrounding sequences in scFvD1.3 myc is shown in figure 5.

The D1.3 antibody is directed against hen egg lysozyme (Harper, M. et al., 1987, Molec. Immunol. 24, 97-108) and the scFv form expressed in E.coli has the same specificity (A. Griffiths and G. Winter personal communication).

Digestion of scFv D1.3 myc with PstI and XhoI (these restriction sites are shown on Fig. 5), excises a fragment of 693 bp which encodes the bulk of the scFv. Ligation of this fragment into fdTps/Xh cleaved with PstI and XhoI gave rise to the construct fdTpsFvD1.3 encoding the gene III signal peptide and first amino acid fused to the complete D1.3 scFv, followed by the mature gene III protein from amino acid 2.

The vector fdTps/Xh was prepared for ligation by digesting with the PstI and XhoI for 2 hours followed by digestion with calf intestinal alkaline phosphatase (Boehringer Mannheim UK Ltd., Bell Lane, Lewes, East Sussex, BN7 1LG) at one unit/ul for 30 minutes at 37°C. Fresh calf intestinal alkaline phosphatase was added to a final total concentration of 2 units/ul and incubated for a further 30 minutes at 37°C. The reaction was extracted three times with phenol/chloroform, precipitated with ethanol and dissolved in water. The insert from scFvD1.3 (PstI and XhoI) extracted twice with phenol/chloroform, precipitated with ethanol and dissolved in water. Ligation was carried out as described in example 1, except both vector and insert samples were at a final concentration of 5 ng/ul each. The formation of the correct construct was confirmed by sequencing as described in example 1.

To demonstrate that proteins of the expected size were produced, virions were concentrated by PEG precipitation as described above. The samples were prepared for electrophoresis as described in Sambrook J. et al 1989 supra. The equivalent of 2mls of supernatant was loaded onto an 18% SDS polyacrylamide gel. After electrophoresis, the gel was soaked in gel running buffer (50 mM Tris, 380 mM Glycine, 0.1%SDS) with 20% methanol for 15 minutes. Transfer to nitrocellulose filter was executed in fresh lx running buffer/20% methanol using

TE70 Semi-phor a semi-dry blotting apparatus (Boeffer, 654 Minnesota Street, Box 77387, San Francisco, California 94107, USA.).

After transfer, the filter was blocked by incubation for 1 hour in a 2% solution of milk powder (Marvel) in phosphate buffered saline (PBS). Detection of scFv and VH protein sequences in the phage antibody fusion proteins was effected by soaking the filter for 1 hour with a 1/2000 dilution (in 2% milk powder) of a rabbit polyclonal antiserum raised against affinity purified, bacterially expressed scFv fragment (gift from G. Winter). After washing with PBS (3 x 5 minute washes), bound primary antibody was detected using an anti-rabbit antibody conjugated to horseradish peroxidase (Sigma, Fancy Road, Poole, Dorset, BH17 7NH, UK.) for 1 hour. The filter was washed in PBS/0.1% Triton X-100 and developed with 0.5 mg/ml 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride (DAB), 0.02% cobalt chloride, 0.03% hydrogen peroxide in PBS.

The results showed that with clones fdTVD1.3 (from example 3 incorporating sequences coding for VH) and fdTscFvD1.3 (incorporating sequences coding for scFv) a protein of between 69,000 and 92,500 daltons is detected by the anti-Fv serum. This is the expected size for the fusion proteins constructed. This product is not observed in supernatants derived from fd-tet, fdT88st or fdTps/Xh.

#### Example 3.

Insertion of Immunoglobulin VH Domain into Phage Antibody The VH fragment from D1.3 was generated from the plasmid p8W1-VHD1.3-TAG1 (Ward, E.S. et al., 1989 supra.). Digestion of this plasmid with PstI and BstEII generates the fragment shown between positions 113 and 432 in figure 5. Cloning of this fragment into the PstI and BstEII sites of fdTps/Xh gave rise to the construct fdTVD1.3 which encodes a fusion protein with a complete VH domain inserted between the first and third amino acids of the mature gene III protein (amino acid two has been deleted).

The methods used were exactly as in example 2 except that the vector used was fdTps/Xh digested with PstI and BstEII.

#### Example 4.

Analysis of Binding Specificity of Phage Antibodies The binding of the various phage antibodies to the specific antigen, lysozyme, was analysed using ELISA techniques. Phage antibodies (e.g. fdTVD1.3 and fdTscFvD1.3) were grown in E.coli and phage antibody particles were precipitated with PEG as described in the materials and methods. Bound phage antibody particles were detected using polyclonal sheep serum raised against the closely related phage M13.

ELISA plates were prepared by coating 96 well plates (Falcon Microtest III flexible plate, Falcon: Becton Dickinson Labware, 1950 Williams Drive, Oxnard, California, 93030, USA.) with 200  $\mu$ l of a solution of lysozyme (1mg/ml unless otherwise stated) in 50 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub> for 16-24 hours. Before use, this solution was removed, the plate rinsed several times in PBS and incubated with 200  $\mu$ l of 2% milk powder/PBS for 1 hour. After rinsing several times with PBS, 100  $\mu$ l of the test samples were added and incubated for 1 hour. Plates were washed (3 rinses in 0.05% Tween 20/PBS followed by 3 rinses in PBS alone). Bound phase antibodies were detected by adding 200  $\mu$ l/well of a 1/1000 dilution of sheep anti-M13 polyclonal antiserum (gift from G. Winter, although an equivalent antibody can be readily made by one skilled in the art using standard methodologies) in 2% milk powder/PBS and incubating for 1 hour. After washing as above, plates were incubated with biotinylated anti-sheep antibody (Amersham International) for 30 minutes. Plates were washed as above, and incubated with streptavidin-horse radish peroxidase complex (Amersham International). After a final wash as above, 0.5 mg/ml ABTS substrate in citrate buffer was added (ABTS = 2,2'-azino-bis (3-ethylbenzthiazoline sulphonic acid); citrate buffer = 50 mM citric acid, 50 mM tri-sodium citrate at a ratio of 54:46. Hydrogen peroxide was added to a final concentration of 0.003% and the plates incubated for 1 hour. The optical density at 405 nm was read in a Titartek multiskan plate reader.

Figure 6 shows the effect of varying the amount of phage antibody. 100  $\mu$ l of various dilutions of PEG precipitated phage were applied and the amount expressed in terms of the original culture volume from which it was derived. Signals derived from both the scfv containing phage antibody (fdscfvDI.3) and the VH containing phage antibody (fdvHDI.3) and the VH containing phage antibody were higher than that derived from the phage antibody vector (fdvps/Xh). The highest signal to noise ratio occurs using the equivalent of 1.3 a.i.s of culture.

Figure 7 shows the results of coating the plates with varying concentrations of lysozyme or bovine serum albumin (BSA). The equivalent of 1 ml of the original phage antibody culture supernatant was used. The signals from supernatants derived from fdscfvDI.3 were again higher than those derived from fdvps/Xh when lysozyme coated wells were used. There was no significant difference between these two types of supernatant when the plates were coated with BSA. Broadly speaking the level of signal on the plates is proportional to the amount of lysozyme coated. These results demonstrate that the binding detected is specific for lysozyme as the antigen.

#### Example 5: Construction of fd-CAT 2

It would be useful to design vectors that enable the use of restriction enzymes that cut DNA infrequently, thus avoiding unwanted digestion of the antibody gene inserts within their coding sequence. Enzymes with an eight base recognition sequence are particularly useful in this respect, for example NotI and SfiI. Chaudhary et al (PNAS 87 p1066-1070, 1990) have identified a number of restriction sites which occur rarely in antibody variable genes. The applicant has designed and constructed a vector that utilises two of these sites, as an example of how this type of enzyme can be used. Essentially sites for the enzymes ApelI and NotI were engineered into fdvps/Xh to create fdCAT2.

The oligonucleotide:  
5'ACT TTC AAC AGT TTC TGC GGC CGC CCG TTT GAT CTC GAG CTC CTG CAG TTG GAC CTG TGC ACT GTG AGA ATA GAA 3' was synthesised (supra fig 4 legend) and used to mutagenise fdvps/Xh using an in vitro mutagenesis kit from Amersham International as described in example 1, to create fd-CAT2. The sequence of fd-CAT2 was checked around the site of manipulation by DNA sequencing. The final sequence around the insertion point within gene III is shown in figure 8.

N.B. fdCAT2 is also referred to herein by the alternative terminologies fd-tet-DOO1 and fdDOO1.

#### Example 6: Specific Binding of Phage-antibody (pab) to Antigen

The binding of pab DI.3 (fdscfvDI.3 of example 2) to lysozyme was further analysed by ELISA.

##### Methods:

##### 1. Phage growth.

Cultures of phage transduced bacteria were prepared in 10-100 ml 2 x TY medium with 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline and grown with shaking at 37°C for 16-24 hrs. Phage supernatant was prepared by centrifugation of the culture (10 min at 10,000 rpm, 8 x 50 ml rotor, Sorval RC-5B centrifuge). At this stage, the phage titre was 1 - 5 x 10<sup>10</sup>/ml transducing units. The phage were precipitated by adding 1/5 volume 20% PEG 2.5 M NaCl, leaving for 1 hr at 4°C, and centrifuging (supra). The phage pellets were resuspended in 10 mM Tris-HCl, 1mM EDTA pH 8.0 to 1/100th of the original volume, and residual bacteria and aggregated phage removed by centrifugation for 2 min in a bench microfuge.

##### ELISA

Plates were coated with antigen (1 mg/ml antigen) and blocked as described in example 4. 2 x 10<sup>10</sup> phage transducing units were added to the antigen coated plates in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) containing 2% skimmed milk powder (MPBS). Plates were washed between each step

with three rinses of 0.5% Tween-20 in PBS followed by three rinses of PBS. Bound phage was developed by incubating with sheep anti-M13 antisera and detected with horseradish peroxidase (HRP) conjugated anti-goat serum (Sigma, Poole, Dorset, UK) which also detects sheep immunoglobulins and ABTS (2,2'-azino-bis (3-ethylbenzthiazoline sulphonic acid). Readings were taken at 405 nm after a suitable period. The results (figure 9) show that the antibody bearing-phage had the same pattern of reactivity as the original D1.3 antibody (Harper, M., Iema, F., Boulton, G., and Poljak, F.J. (1987) *Molec. Immunol.* 24, 97-108), and bound to hen egg-white lysozyme, but not to turkey egg-white lysozyme, human lysozyme or bovine serum albumin. The specificity of the phage is particularly illustrated by the lack of binding to the turkey egg-white lysozyme that differs from hen egg-white lysozyme by only 7 amino acids.

#### Expression of Fab D1.3

The aim of this example was to demonstrate that the scFv format used in example 2 was only one way of displaying antibody fragments in the pAb system. A more commonly used antibody fragment is the Fab fragment (figure 1) and this example describes the construction of a pAb that expresses a Fab-like fragment on its surface and shows that it binds specifically to its antigen. The applicant chose to express the heavy chain of the antibody fragment consisting of the VH and CH1 domains from coding sequences within the pAb itself and to co-express the light chain in the bacterial host cell infected with the pAb. The VH and CH1 regions of anti-lysozyme antibody D1.3 were cloned in *fd* CAT2, and the corresponding light chain cloned in plasmid pUC19. The work of Skerra and Pluckthun (*Science* 240, 1038-1040 (1988) and Better et al 1988 *supra*) demonstrated that multimeric antigen binding fragments of the antibody molecule could be secreted into the periplasm of the bacterial cell in a functional form using suitable signal sequences. However, in these publications, special measures were described as being needed to recover the binding protein from the cell, for example Skerra and Pluckthun needed to recover the Fv fragment from the periplasm by affinity chromatography. The present applicants have shown that it is possible to direct the binding molecule to the outside of the cell on a phage particle, a process that requires several events to occur: correct secretion and folding of the binding molecule; association of the chains of the binding molecule; correct assembly of the phage particle; and export of the intact phage particle from the cell.

Alternatively, it is possible however, to express the light chain from within the pAb genome by, for

example, cloning an expression cassette into a suitable place in the phage genome. Such a suitable place would be the intergenic region which houses the multicloning sites engineered into derivative of the related phage M13 (see, for example, Yanisch-Perron, C. et al., *Gene* 33, p103-119, (1985)).

The starting point for this example was the clone Fab D1.3 in pUC19, a map of which is shown in figure 10. The regions hybridising with the oligonucleotides KSJ6 and 7 below are shown underlined in fig 10. The sequence encoding the VH-CH1 region (defined at the 5' and 3' ends by the oligonucleotides KSJ6 and 7 below) was PCR amplified from Fab D1.3 in pUC19 using oligonucleotides KSJ 6 and 7, which retain the Pet I site at the 5' end and introduce a Xho I site at the 3' end, to facilitate cloning into *fd* CAT2. The sequences for the oligonucleotides KSJ6 and 7 are shown below. The underlined region of KSJ7 shows the portion hybridising with the sequence for D1.3.

KSJ6: 5' AGG TGC AGC TGC AGG AGT CAG G 3'  
KSJ7: 5' GGT GAC CTC GAG TGA AGA TTT CGG CTC AAC TTT C 3'  
PCR conditions were as described in example 11, except that thirty cycles of PCR amplification were performed with denaturation at 92°C for 45 seconds, annealing at 55°C for 1 minute and extension at 72°C for 1 minute. The template used was DNA from T61 cells containing Fab D1.3 in pUC19 resuspended in water and boiled. The template DNA was prepared from the colonies by picking some colony material into 100µl of distilled H<sub>2</sub>O and boiling for 10 mins. 1µl of this mixture was used in a 20µl PCR. This regime resulted in amplification of the expected fragment of approximately 600bp. This fragment was cut with Pet I and Xho I, purified from an agarose gel and ligated into Pet I/Xho I-cut *fd*CAT2. The PCR mixture was extracted with phenol/chloroform and ethanol precipitated (Sambrook et al. *supra*.) before digestion with Pet I and Xho I (New England Biolabs according to manufacturers recommendations. The fragment was resolved on 1% Tris-Acetate ED2A agarose gel (Sambrook et al. *supra*) and purified using GeneClean (BIO 101, Geneclean, La Jolla, San Diego, California, USA) according to manufacturers recommendations.

*fd*-CAT2 vector DNA was digested with Pet I and Xho I (New England Biolabs) according to manufacturers recommendations, extracted with phenol/chloroform and ethanol precipitated (Sambrook et al. *supra*.).

5µg of Pet I/Xho I-digested vector DNA was ligated to 40µg of PCR-amplified Pet I/Xho I-digested hEGF-R fragment in 12µl of ligation buffer (66mM TrisHCl (pH 7.6), 5mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 5mM dithiothreitol, (100µg/ml bovine serum albumin, 0.5mM ATP, 0.5mM Spermidine) and 40C units T4 DNA ligase (New England Biolabs) for 16 hours at 16°C.

Two  $\mu$ l of the ligation mixture was transformed into 200  $\mu$ l of competent E.coli MC1061 cells, plated on 2TY agar containing 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline and incubated at 30°C for 20 hours. A portion of the ligation reaction mixture was transformed into E.coli MC1061 (Available from, for example Clontech Laboratories Inc, Palo Alto, California) and colonies identified by hybridisation with the oligonucleotide D1.3CDR3A as described in example 10. The presence of the VHCH1 gene fragment was likewise confirmed by PCR, using oligonucleotides KSJ6 and 7. A representative clone was called fd CAT2VHCH1 D1.3. The heavy chain was deleted from Fab D1.3 in pUC19 by Sph I cleavage of Fab D1.3 plasmid DNA. The pUC 19 2.7kb fragment containing the light chain gene was purified from a TAE agarose gel, and 10ng of this DNA self-ligated and transformed into competent E.coli TGI. Cells were plated on 2TY agar containing ampicillin (100  $\mu$ g/ml) and incubated at 30°C overnight. The resulting colonies were used to make miniprep DNA (Sambrook et al. supra), and the absence of the heavy chain gene confirmed by digestion with Sph I and Hind III. A representative clone was called LCL1.3 DHC.

An overnight culture of fd CAT2VHCH1 D1.3 cells was microcentrifuged at 13,000xg for 10 minutes and 50  $\mu$ l of the supernatant containing phage particles added to 50  $\mu$ l of an overnight culture of LCL1.3 DHC cells. The cells were incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes and plated on 2TY agar containing ampicillin (100  $\mu$ g/ml) and 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline. Phage were prepared from some of the resulting colonies and assayed for their ability to bind lysozyme as described in example 6.

The results (Figure 11) showed that when the heavy and light chain Fab derivatives from the original antibody D1.3 were present, the pAb bound to lysozyme. pAb expressing the fd VHCH1 fragment did not bind to lysozyme unless grown in cells also expressing the light chain. This shows that a functional Fab fragment was produced by an association of the free light chain with VHCH1 fragment fused to gene III and expressed on the surface of the pAb.

#### Example 8

#### Isolation of Specific, Desired Phage from a Mixture of Vector Phages.

The applicant purified pAb (D1.3) (originally called fdTACVPD1.3 in example 2) from mixtures using antigen affinity columns. pAb (D1.3) was mixed with vector fd phage (see table 1) and approximately 10<sup>12</sup> phage passed over a column of lysozyme-Sepharose (prepared from cyanogen bromide activated sepharose 4B (Pharmacia, Milton Keynes, Bucks, UK.) according to the manufacturer's instructions. TGI cells were infected with appropriate dilutions of the elutes and the colonies derived, were

analysed by probing with an oligonucleotide that detects only the pAb (D1.3) see Table 1 and Fig. 12. A thousand fold enrichment of pAb(D1.3) was seen with a single column pass. By growing the enriched phage and passing it down the column again, enrichments of up to a million fold were seen.

Enrichment was also demonstrated using purely immunological criteria. For example, 10<sup>12</sup> phage (at a ratio of 1 pAb (D1.3) to 4 x 10<sup>6</sup> fdrPs/Bs) was subjected to two rounds of affinity selection, and then 26 colonies picked and grown overnight. The phage was then assayed for lysozyme binding by ELISA (as example 6). Five colonies yielded phage with lysozyme binding activities, see table 1, and these were shown to encode the scFv (D1.3) by PCR screening (example 13, using 30 cycles of 1 minute at 92°C, 1 minute at 60°C, 1 minute at 72°C using CDR3PCR1 and oligo 3 (fig. 4) as primers).

Thus very rare pAbs can be fished out of large populations, by using antigen to select and then screen the phage.

In this example, affinity chromatography of pAbs and oligonucleotide probing were carried out as described below.

Approximately 10<sup>12</sup> phage particles in 1ml MPBS were loaded onto a 1 ml lysozyme-Sepharose affinity column which had been prewashed in MPBS. The column was washed in turn with 10 ml PBS; then 10 ml 50 mM Tris-HCl, 500 mM NaCl pH 7.5; then 10ml 50 mM Tris-HCl 500 mM NaCl pH 8.5; then 5 ml 50 mM Tris-HCl, 500 mM NaCl pH 9.5 (adjusted with triethylamine) and then eluted with 5 ml 100 mM triethylamine. The eluate was neutralised with 0.5 M sodium phosphate buffer pH 6.8 and the phage plated for analysis. For a second round of affinity chromatography, the first column eluate was plated to about 30,000 colonies per petri dish. After overnight growth, and a colonies were then scraped into 5 ml 2 x TY medium, and a 20  $\mu$ l aliquot diluted into 10 ml fresh medium and grown overnight. The phage was PEG precipitated as described above, resuspended in 1 ml MPBS and loaded onto the column, washed and eluted as above.

Oligonucleotides synthesised:

CDR3PCR1 5'-TGA GGA C(A or T) C(A or T) GC CGT CTA CTA CTG TGC 3'

40 pmole of oligonucleotide VH1FOR (Ward, E. S., et al (1989) Nature 341, 544-546), specific to pAb (D1.3) was phosphorylated with 100  $\mu$ Ci  $\alpha$ -32P ATP, hybridised (1  $\mu$ mole/ml) to nitrocellulose filters at 67°C in 6 x saline sodium citrate (SSC) Sambrook et al., supra, buffer for 30 minutes and allowed to cool to room temperature for 30 mins, washed 3 x 1 min at 60°C in 0.1 x SSC.

#### Example 9

Construction of pAb Expressing Anti-hapten Activity  
Oxazolone is a hapten that is commonly used for studying the details of the immune response. The anti-oxazolone antibody, NQ11 has been described previously (E. Charard, R. Pannell, C. Milstein, J. Immunol. Method 126 61-68). A plasmid containing the VH and VL gene of NQ11 was converted to a scFv form by inserting the BstXI/SacI fragment of scFvD1.3 myc (nucleotides 432-499 of Fig. 5) between the VH and VL genes to generate pscFvNQ11, the sequence of which is shown in fig. 13. This scFv was cloned into the PstI/XhoI site of pFRTp/Xh (as described earlier) to generate pAb NQ11 has an internal PstI site and so it was necessary to do a complete digest of pscFvNQ11 with XhoI followed by a partial digest with PstI).

The specific binding of pAb NQ11 was confirmed using ELISA. ELISA plates were coated at 37°C in 50 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub> at a protein concentration of 200 µg/ml. Plates were coated with either hen egg lysozyme (HEL), bovine serum albumin (BSA), or BSA conjugated to oxazolone (OX-BSA) (method of conjugation in Makela O., Kartinen M., Palkonen J.L.F., Karjalainen K. (1978) J. Exp. Med. 148 1644). Preparation of phage, binding to ELISA plates, washing and detection was as described in example 6. Samples were assayed in duplicate and the average absorbance after 10 minutes presented in figure 14.

This result demonstrates that the pAb NQ11 binds the correct antigen. Figure 14 also shows that pAb D1.3 and pAb NQ11 bind only to the antigen against which the original antibodies were raised.

Example 10  
Enrichment of pAb D1.3 from Mixtures of Other pAb by Affinity Purification

3 x 10<sup>10</sup> phage in 10 ml of PBSM at the ratios of pAb D1.3 to pAb NQ11 shown in table 2 were passed over a 1 ml lysozyme Sepharose column. Washing, elution and other methods were as described in example 8 unless otherwise stated. Eluates from the columns were used to infect T61 cells which were then plated out. Colonies were probed with a probe which distinguishes pAb D1.3 from pAb NQ11. The sequence of this oligonucleotide (D1.3CDR3A) is:-

5'GTA GTC AAG CCA ATA ATC TCT CTC 3'

Table 2 presents the data from this experiment. An enrichment of almost 1000 fold was achieved in one round and an enrichment of over a million fold in two rounds of purification. This parallels the result described in example 8.

Example 11

Insertion of a Gene Encoding an Enzyme (Alkaline phosphatase) into fd-CAT2

As an example of the expression of a functional

enzyme on the bacteriophage surface, the applicants have chosen bacterial alkaline phosphatase, an enzyme that normally functions as a dimer (McCracken, S. and Maighan, E. J. Biol. Chem. 255, 22396-2404, (1980)). The oligonucleotides were designed to generate a PCR product with an Apa LI site at the 5' end of phoA gene and a Not I site at its 3' end, thus facilitating cloning into fd-CAT 2 to create a gene III fusion protein. The oligonucleotides synthesised were:

phoA15' TAT TCT CAC AGT GCA CAA ACT GTT GAA CGG ACA CCA  
GAA ATG CTT GTT CTG 3' and,  
phoA215' ACA TGT ACA TGC GGC CCG TTT CAG CCG AAG AGC GGC  
TTT C3'

The sequence of the phoA gene is presented in Chang C. N. et al. Gene 44, 121-125 (1986). The plasmid amplified (pEX86) contains an alkaline phosphatase gene which differs from the sequence of Chang et al. by a mutation which converts arginine to alanine at position 166.

The PCR reaction was carried out in 100µl of 10 mM Tris/HCl pH 8.3, containing 50 mM KCl, 5mMTPP 2.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.014 gelatin, 0.25 units/µl of Taq polymerase (Cetus/Perkin Elmer) and 0.5µg/ml template. The template was the pEX86 plasmid (described by Chaidaroglou et al., Biochemistry 27, p8338-8343, 1988). The PCR was carried out in a Techne (Techne, Duxford, Cambridge, UK) PNC-2 dmi-block using thirty cycles of 1 min at 92°C, 2 min at 50°C, 3 min at 72°C.

The resultant product was extracted with phenol:chloroform, precipitated with ethanol, and the pellet dissolved in 35µl water. Digestion with 0.3 units/µl of Apa LI was carried out in 150µl volume according to manufacturers instructions for two hours at 37°C. After heat inactivation of the enzyme at 65°C, NaCl was added to a final concentration of 150mM and 0.4 units/µl NotI enzyme added. After incubation for 2 hours at 37°C, the digest was extracted with phenol:chloroform and precipitated as above, before being dissolved in 30µl of water. The vector fd-CAT2 was sequentially digested with Apa LI and NotI according to the manufacturers instructions and treated with calf intestinal alkaline phosphatase as described in example 2. The sample was extracted three times with phenol:chloroform, precipitated with ethanol and dissolved in water. The ligations were performed with a final DNA concentration of 1-2µg/µl of both the cut fd-CAT2 and the digested PCR product. The ligations were transformed into competent T61 cells and plated on 2xT7 test plates. Identification of clones containing the desired insert was by analytical PCR performed using the conditions and primers above, on boiled samples of the resulting colonies. The correct clones containing the phoA gene fused in frame to gene III were called fd-phoA15 166. The sequence at the junction



59

of the cloning region is given in figure 15.

#### Example 12 Measuring Enzyme Activity of Phage-enzyme

Overnight cultures of TGI or KS272 (E. coli cells lacking phoA, Strauch K. L., and Beckwith J. PNAS 85 1576-1580, 1988) cells containing either fd-phoA16 or fd-CAT2 were grown at 37°C in 2xTY with 15µg/ml tetracycline. Concentrated, PEG precipitated phage were prepared as described earlier. Enzyme assays (Malamy, M.H. and Horecker B.L., Biochemistry 3, p1893-1897, (1964)) were carried out at 24°C in a final concentration of 1M Tris/HCl pH 8.0, 1mM 4-nitrophenyl phosphate (Sigma), 1mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>. 100µl of a two times concentrate of this reaction mixture was mixed with 100µl of the test sample in a 96 well plate. Absorbance readings were taken every minute for 30 minutes at a wavelength of 405nm in a Titretak Mk 2 plate reader. Initial reaction rates were calculated from the rate of change of absorbance using a molar absorbance of 17000 l/mol/cm.

Standard curves (amount of enzyme vs. rate of change of absorbance) were prepared using dilutions of purified bacterial alkaline phosphatase (Sigma type III) in 10mM Tris/HCl pH 8.0, 1mM EDTA. The number of enzyme molecules in the phage samples were estimated from the actual rates of change of absorbance of the phage samples and comparison to this standard curve.

The results in Table 3 show that alkaline phosphatase activity was detected in PEG precipitated material in the sample containing fd-phoA16 but not fd-CAT2. Furthermore, the level of activity was consistent with the expected number of 1-2 dimer molecules of enzyme per phage. The level of enzyme activity detected was not dependent on the host used for growth. In particular, fd-phoA16 grown on phoA minus hosts showed alkaline phosphatase activity.

Therefore, the phage expressed active alkaline phosphatase enzyme, from the phoA-gene III fusion, on the phage surface.

#### Example 13 Insertion of Binding Molecules into Alternative Sites in the Phage

The availability of an alternative site in the phage for the insertion of binding molecules would open up the possibility of more easily expressing more than one binding molecule e.g. an antibody fragment in a single phb. This may be used to generate single or multiple binding specificities. The presence of two distinct binding activities on a single molecule will greatly increase the utility and specificity of this molecule. It may be useful in the binding of viruses with a high mutational rate such as human immunodeficiency virus. In addition, it may be used to bring antigens into close

60

proximity (e.g. drug targeting or cell fusion) or it may act as a "molecular clamp" in chemical, immunological or enzymatic processes.

The vector fd-tet and the derivatives described here, have a single BamHI site in gene 3. This has previously been used for the expression of peptide fragments on the surface of filamentous bacteriophage (Smith GP. (1985) Science 228 p1315-1317 and de la Cruz et al. (1988) J Biol. Chem. 263 p4318-4322). This provides a potential alternative site for the insertion of antibody fragments.

DNA fragments encoding scFv's from D1.3 or NQ11 were generated by PCR using the primers shown below. These primers were designed to generate a fragment with BamHI sites near both the termini, to enable cloning into the BamHI site of gene3 (see figure 16(1)). The oligonucleotides used, also ensure that the resulting PCR product lacks PstI and XhoI restriction sites normally used for manipulating the scFv's (see figure 16(1)). This will facilitate subsequent manipulation of a second antibody fragment in the usual way at the N terminus of gene 3. The oligonucleotides used were:-

GB3Bam1 5'-TTT AAT GAG GAT CCA CAG GTG CAG CTG CAA GAG 3'-

GB3Bam2 5'-AAC GAA TGG ATC CCG TTT GAT CTC AGC CTT 3'.

Preparation of vector and PCR insert  
The PCR reaction was carried out in an 80 µl reaction as described in example 11 using 100 µl of template and 0.25U/µl of Tag polymerase and a cycle regime of 94°C for 1 minute, 60°C for 1 minute and 70°C for 2 minutes over 30 cycles. The template was either pscfVNQ11 (example 9) or scFvD1.3 myc (example 2). Reaction products were extracted with phenol:chloroform, precipitated, dissolved in water and digested with BamHI according to manufacturers instructions. The digest was re-extracted with phenol: chloroform, precipitated and dissolved in water.

The vector fdTPS/2h was cleaved with BamHI and treated with calf intestinal phosphatase and purified as described in example 2. Ligations were set up at a vector concentration of approximately 600 µl and a PCR insert concentration of approximately 300 µl. These were ligated for 2.5 hours at room temperature before transforming into competent TGI cells and plating on TY tet plates. The resultant colonies were probed as described in example 8. DNA was prepared from a number of colonies and the correct orientation and insert size confirmed by restriction digestion with Hind III in isolation or in combination with BamHI. (One Hind III site is contributed by one of the primers and the other by the vector).

Two clones containing a D1.3 insert (fd3Bam1) and one containing an NQ11 insert (NQ11Bam1)



were grown up and phage prepared as described earlier. ELISAs were carried out as described in example 6. No specific signal was found for any of these clones suggesting that the natural BamHI site is not a suitable site for insertion of a functional antibody (results not shown).

It may be possible to clone into alternative sites to retain binding activity. The peptide repeats present in gene III may provide such a site (figure 16 blocks A and B). This can be done by inserting a BamHI site and using the PCR product described above. To facilitate this, the natural BamHI site was removed by mutagenesis with the oligonucleotide G3mut08am shown below (using an in vitro mutagenesis kit (Amersham International)):-

G3mut08am 5' CA AAC GAA TGG GTC CTC ATT A 3'

The underlined residue replaces an A residue, thereby removing the BamHI site. DNA was prepared from a number of clones and several mutants lacking BamHI sites identified by restriction digestion.

The oligonucleotide G3 Bamlink was designed to introduce a BamHI site at a number of possible sites within the peptide linker sites A and B, see figure 16(2). The sequence of the linker is:

Bamlink 5'CC (G or A) CC ACC CTC GGA TCC (G or A) CC ACC CTC 3'

Its relationship to the peptide repeats in gene III is shown in figure 16.

Example 14  
PCR Assembly of Mouse VH and VL Kappa (VLK) Repertoires for Phage Display

The principle is illustrated in figure 17. Details are provided in sections A to F below but the broad outline is first discussed.

1. cDNA is prepared from spleen RNA from an appropriate mouse and the VH and VLK repertoires individually amplified. Separately, primers reverse and complementary to VHIFOR-2 (domain 1) and VLK2BACK (domain 2) are used to amplify an existing scFV-containing DNA by PCR. (The term PCR refers to e.g. a primer for amplification of sequences on the sense strand resulting in antisense coding sequences. The term BACK refers to e.g. a primer for amplification of sequences on the antisense strand resulting in sense coding sequences). This generates a 'linker' molecule encoding the linker with the amino acid sequence (1 letter code) (GGGS)<sub>3</sub> which overlaps the two primary (VH and VLK) PCR products.

2. The separate amplified VH, VLK and linker sequences now have to be assembled into a continuous DNA molecule by use of an 'assembly' PCR. In the secondary 'assembly' PCR, the VH, VLK and linker bands are combined and assembled by virtue of the

above referred to overlaps. This generates an assembled DNA fragment that will direct the expression of VH and one VLK domain. The specific VH/VLK combination is derived randomly from the separate VH and VLK repertoires referred to above.

The assembly PCR is carried out in two stages. Firstly, 7 rounds of cycling with just the three bands present in the PCR, followed by a further 20 rounds in the presence of the flanking primers VHBACK (referring to domain 1 of VH) and VLKFOR. The nucleotide sequences for these oligonucleotide primers are provided under the section entitled 'Primer Sequences' below. This two stage process, avoids the potential problem of preferential amplification of the first combinations to be assembled.

For cloning into the phage system, the assembled repertoires must be 'tagged' with the appropriate restriction sites. In the example provided below this is illustrated by providing an ApalI restriction site at the VH end of the continuous DNA molecule and a Not I site at the VLK end of the molecule. This is carried out by a third stage PCR using tagged primers. The nucleotide sequences for these oligonucleotide primers are also provided under the section entitled 'Primer Sequences' below. There are however, 4 possible kappa light chain sequences (whereas a single consensus heavy chain sequence can be used). Therefore 4 oligonucleotide primer sequences are provided for VLK.

For this third stage PCR, sets of primers which create the new restriction site and have a further 10 nucleotides on the 5' side of the restriction site have been used. However, long tags may give better cutting, in which case 15-20 nucleotide overhangs could be used.

Scrupulously clean procedures must be used at all times to avoid contamination during PCR. Negative controls containing no DNA must always be included to monitor for contamination. Gel boxes must be depurinated. A dedicated GeneClean kit (Bio 101, GeneClean, La Jolla, San Diego, California, USA) can be used according to manufacturers instructions to extract DNA from an agarose gel. The beads, NaI and the NEM wash should be aliquoted.

All enzymes were obtained from CP Laboratories, P.O. Box 22, Bishop's Stortford, Herts CM20 3DH and the manufacturers recommended and supplied buffers were used unless otherwise stated.

#### A. RNA Preparation

RNA can be prepared using any procedures well known to those skilled in the art. As an example, the following protocol (Triton X-100 lysis, phenol/SDS RNase inactivation) gives excellent results with spleen and hybridoma cells (the addition of VRC (varnol ribosyl

complex) as an RNase inhibitor is necessary for spleen cells). Guanidinium isothiocyanate/CsCl procedures (yielding total cellular RNA) also give good results but are more time-consuming.

1. Harvest  $1$  to  $5 \times 10^7$  cells by centrifugation in a bench top centrifuge at 800xg for 10 minutes at 4°C. Resuspend gently in 50ml of cold PBS buffer. Centrifuge the cells again at 800xg for 10 minutes at 4°C, and discard supernatant.
2. On ice, add 1 ml ice-cold lysis buffer to the pellet and resuspend it with a 1ml Gilson pipette by gently pipetting up and down. Leave on ice for 5 minutes.
3. After lysis, remove cell debris by centrifuging at 1300 rpm for 5 minutes in a microfuge at 4°C, in precooled tubes.
4. Transfer 0.5 ml of the supernatant to each of two eppendorfs containing 60µl 10% (w/v) SDS and 250 µl phenol (previously equilibrated with 100 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.0). Vortex hard for 2 minutes, then microfuge (13000 rpm) for five minutes at room temperature. Transfer the upper, aqueous, phase to a fresh tube. Re-extract the aqueous upper phase five times with 0.5 ml of phenol.
5. Precipitate with 1/10 volume 3M sodium acetate and 2.5 volumes ethanol at 20°C overnight or dry ice-isopropanol for 30 minutes.
6. Wash the RNA pellet and resuspended in 50 µl to check concentration by OD260 and check 2 µg on a 1% agarose gel. 40µg of RNA was obtained from spleen cells derived from mice.

Lysis buffer is [10mM Tris-HCl pH 7.4, 1mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 150mM NaCl, 10mM VRC (New England Biolabs), 0.5% (w/v) Triton X-100], prepared fresh.

Lysis buffer is [10mM Tris-HCl pH 7.4, 1mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 150mM NaCl, 10mM VRC (New England Biolabs), 0.5% (w/v) Triton X-100], prepared fresh.

#### B. cDNA Preparation

cDNA can be prepared using many procedures well known to those skilled in the art. As an example, the following protocol can be used:

1. Set up the following reverse transcription mix:

H <sub>2</sub> O (DEPC-treated)	µl
5mM dNTP	20
10 x first strand buffer	10
0.1M DTT	10
FOR primer(s) (10 pmol/µl)	2 (each) (see below)
RNAasin (Promega; 40 U/µl)	4

- i) DEPC is diethylpyrocarbonate, the function of which is to inactivate any enzymes that could degrade DNA

or RNA

- ii) dNTP is deoxynucleotide triphosphate
- iii) DTT is dithiothreitol the function of which is as an antioxidant to create the reducing environment necessary for enzyme function.

- iv) RNAasin is a ribonuclease inhibitor obtained from Promega Corporation, 2800 Woods Hollow Road, Madison, Wisconsin, USA.

2. Dilute 10 µg RNA to 40 µl final volume with DEPC-treated water. Heat at 65°C for 3 minutes and hold on ice for one minute (to remove secondary structure).

3. Add to the RNA the reverse transcription mix (58 µl) and 4 µl of the cloned reverse transcriptase 'Super RT' (Anglian Biotech Ltd., Whitehall House, Whitehall Road, Colchester, Essex) and incubate at 42°C for one hour.

4. Boil the reaction mix for three minutes, cool on ice for one minute and then spin in a microfuge to pellet debris. Transfer the supernatant to a new tube.

10 x first strand buffer is [1.4M KCl, 0.5M Tris-HCl pH 8.1 at 42°C 80mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>].

The primers anneal to the 3' end. Examples of kappa light chain primers are MJK1FONX, MJK2FONX, MJK4FONX and MJK5FONX (provided under 'Primer Sequences' below) and examples of heavy chain primers are HIGG1, 2 (CTG GAC AGG GAT CCA GAG TTC CA) and HIGG3 (CTG GAC AGG GCT CCA TAG TTC CA) which anneal to CH1.

Alternatively, any primer that binds to the 3' end of the variable regions VH, VK, VL, or to the constant regions CH1, CK or CL can be used.

#### C. Primary PCRs

For each PCR and negative control, the following reactions are set up (e.g. one reaction for each of the four VLKs and four VH PCRs). In the following, the Vent DNA polymerase sold by (C.P. Laboratories Ltd (New England Biolabs) address given above) was used. The buffers are as provided by C.P. Laboratories.

H <sub>2</sub> O	µl
10 x Vent buffer	32.5
20 x Vent BSA	5
5mM dNTPs	2.5
FOR primer 10 pmol/µl	1.5
BACK primer 10pmol/µl	2.5
	2.5

The FOR and BACK primers are given in the section below entitled 'Primer Sequences'. For VH, the FOR primer is VH1FOR-2 and the BACK primer is VH1BACK. For VLK the FOR primers are MJK1FONX, MJK2FONX, MJK4FONX and MJK5FONX (for the four respective kappa light chains) and the BACK

primer is VK2BACK. Only one kappa light chain BACK primer is necessary, because binding is to a nucleotide sequence common to the four kappa light chains.

UV this mix 5 minutes. Add 2.5 µl cDNA preparation (from B above), 2 drops paraffin oil (Sigma Chemicals, Poole, Dorset, UK). Place on a cycling heating block, e.g. PHC-2 manufactured by Techna Ltd. Duxford UK, pre-set at 94°C. Add 1 µl Vent DNA polymerase under the paraffin. Amplify using 25 cycles of 94°C 1 min, 72°C 2 min. Post-treat at 60°C for 5 min.

Purify on a 2% lmp (low melting point agarose/TAE (tris-acetate EDTA) gel and extract the DNA to 20 µl H<sub>2</sub>O per original PCR using a Geneclean kit (see earlier) in accordance with the manufacturers instructions.

#### D. Preparation of linker

Sat up in bulk (e.g. 10 times)

H <sub>2</sub> O	µl
10 x Vent buffer	34.3
20 x Vent BSA	5
5mM dNTPs	2.5
LINKFOR primer 10 pmol/µl	2
LINKBACK primer 10 pmol/µl	2.5
DNA from fcfv D1.3 (example 2)	2.5
Vent enzyme	1
	0.2

The FOR and BACK primers are given in the section below entitled 'Primer Sequences'. The FOR primer is LINKFOR and the BACK primer is LINKBACK. Cover with paraffin and place on the cycling heating block (see above) at 94°C. Amplify using 25 cycles of 94°C 1 min, 65°C 1 min, 72°C 2 min. Post-treat at 60°C for 5 min.

Purify on 2% lmp/TAE gel (using a loading dye without bromophenol blue as a 93bp fragment is desired) and elute with SPIN-X column (Costar Limited, 205 Broadway, Cambridge, Ma. USA.) and precipitation. Take up in 5 µl H<sub>2</sub>O per PCR reaction.

#### E. Assembly PCRs

A quarter of each PCR reaction product (5 µl) is used for each assembly. The total volume is 25 µl.

For each of the four VLK primers, the following are set up:

H <sub>2</sub> O	4.95
10 x Vent buffer	2.5
20 x Vent BSA	1.25
5mM dNTPs	0.8

UV irradiate this mix for 5 min. Add 5 µl each of Vh and VK band from the primary PCR and 1.5 µl of linker as isolated from the preparative gels and extracted using the Geneclean kit as described in C and D above. Cover

with paraffin. Place on the cycling heating block pre-set at 94°C. Add 1 µl Vent under the paraffin. Amplify using 7 cycles of 94°C 2 min, 72°C 4 min. Then return the temperature to 94°C.

Add 1.5 µl each of Vh1BACK and the appropriate VKFOR primers: MKK1FONX, MKK2FONX, MKK4FONX or MKK5FONX (10 pmol/µl) at 94°C. The primers should have been UV-treated as above. Amplify using 20 cycles of 94°C 1.5 min, 72°C 2.5 min. Post-treat at 60°C for 5 min. Purify on 2% lmp/TAE gel and extract the DNA to 20 µl H<sub>2</sub>O per assembly PCR using a Geneclean kit (see earlier) in accordance with the manufacturers instructions.

#### F. Adding Restriction Sites

For each assembly and control set up:

H <sub>2</sub> O	µl
10 x Tag buffer	36.5
5mM dNTPs	5
FOR primer (10 pmol/µl)	2
BACK primer (10 pmol/µl)	2.5
Assembly product	2.5
	1

The FOR and BACK primers are given in the section below entitled 'Primer Sequences'. The FOR primer is any of JK1NOT10, JK2NOT10, JK4NOT10 or JK5NOT10 (for the four respective kappa light chains) for putting a NotI restriction site at the VLK end. The BACK primer is HBKAP10 for putting an ApaI restriction site at the VH end.

Cover with paraffin and place on the cycling heating block pre-set at 94°C. Add 0.5 µl Cetus Tag DNA polymerase (Cetus/parkin-Elmer, Beaconsfield, Bucks, UK) under the paraffin. Amplification is carried out using 11 to 15 rounds of cycling (depends on efficiency) at 94°C 1 min, 55°C 1 min, 72°C 2 min. Post-treat at 60°C for 5 min.

10 x Tag buffer is [0.1M Tris-HCl pH 8.3 at 25°C, 0.5M KCl, 15mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 1mg/ml gelatin].

#### G. Work-up

Purify once with CHCl<sub>3</sub>/IAA (isoamylalcohol), once with phenol, once with CHCl<sub>3</sub>/IAA and back-extract everything to ensure minimal losses. Precipitate and wash twice in 70% EtOH. Dissolve in 70 µl H<sub>2</sub>O.

Digest overnight at 37°C with NotI:

DNA (joined seq)	µl
NEB NotI buffer x 10	70
NEB BSA x 10	10
NotI (10 U/µl)	10

The DNA (joined sequence) above refers to the assembled DNA sequence comprising in the 5' to 3' direction

ApaI restriction site  
Vh sequence

Linker sequence

VLK sequence

Not 1 restriction site.

The VLK sequences may be any one of four possible kappa chain sequences.

The enzymes Not 1 above, ApaI below and the buffers NEB Not 1, NEB BSA above and the NEB buffer 4 (below) are obtainable from CP Laboratories, New England Biolabs mentioned above.

10 Re-precipitate, take up in 80µl H<sub>2</sub>O. Add to this NEB buffer 4 and 10µl ApaI.

as it has a short half-life at 37°C.

15 Purify on 2% Imp/TAE gel and extract the DNA using a GeneClean kit, in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. Redigest if desired.

H. Final DNA product

The final DNA product is an approximate 700 bp fragment with Apa I and NotI compatible ends consisting of randomly associated heavy and light chain sequences linked by a linker. A typical molecule of this type is the scFvD1.3 molecule incorporated into fdscFvD1.3 described in example 3. These molecules can then be ligated into suitable fd derived vectors, e.g. fdCAT2 (example 5), using standard techniques.

Primer sequences

Primary PCR oligos (restriction sites underlined):

VH1FOR-2 TGA GGA GAC GGT GAC GGT GGT CCC TTG GCC CC

VH1BACK AGG TSM ARC TGC AGS AGT CWG G

MJK1FONX CCG TTT GAT TTC CAG CTT GGT GCC

MJK2FONX CCG TTT TAT TTC CAG CTT GGT CCC

MJK4FONX CCG TTT TAT TTC CAA CTT TGT CCC

MJK5FONX CCG TTT CAG CTC CAG CTT GGT CCC

VK2BACK GAC ATT GAG CTC ACC CAG TCT CCA

35 Ambiguity codes M = A or C, R = A or G, S = G or C, W = A or T

PCR oligos to make linker:

LINKFOR TGG AGA CTC GGT GAG CTC AAT GTC

LINKBACK GGG ACC ACG GTC ACC GTC TCC TCA

40

For adding restriction sites:

HBKAP10 CAT GAC CAC AGT GCA CAG GTS MAR CTG CAG SAG TCW

GG

JKINOT10 GAG TCA TTC TGC GGC CGC CCG TTT GAT TTC CAG CTT

GGT GCC

JK2NOT10 GAG TCA TTC TGC GGC CGC CCG TTT TAT TTC CAG CTT

GGT CCC

JK4NOT10 GAG TCA TTC TGC GGC CGC CCG TTT TAT TTC CAA CTT

TGT CCC

JK5NOT10 GAG TCA TTC TGC GGC CGC CCG TTT CAG CTC CAG CTT

GGT CCC

Example 15

Insertion of the Extracellular Domain of a Human Receptor for Platelet Derived Growth Factor (PDGF) isoform BB into fd CAT2

A gene fragment encoding the extracellular domain of the human receptor for platelet derived growth factor isoform BB (h-PDGF-B-R) was isolated by amplification, using the polymerase chain reaction, of plasmid RP41, (from the American Type Culture collection, Cat. No. 50735), a cDNA clone encoding amino acids 43 to 925 of the PDGF-B receptor (Gronwald, R.G.K. et al PNAS 85 p3435-3439 (1988)). Amino acids 1 to 32 of h-PDGF-B-R constitute the signal peptide. The oligonucleotide primers were designed to amplify the region of the h-PDGF-B-R gene corresponding to amino acids 43 to 531 of the encoded protein. The primer RPDGF3 for the N-terminal region also included bases encoding amino acids 33 to 42 of the h-PDGF-B-R protein (corresponding to the first ten amino acids from the N-terminus of the mature protein) to enable expression of the complete extracellular domain. The primers also incorporate a unique ApaI site at the N-terminal end of the fragment and a unique XhoI site at the C terminal end to facilitate cloning into the vector fdCAT2. The sequences of the primers is:

RPDGF3 5' CAC AGT GCA CTG GTC ACA CCC CCG GGG CCA GAG  
CTT GTC CTC AAT GTC TCC ACC ACC TTC GTT CTG 3'  
RPDGF2 5' GAT CTC GAG CTT AAA GGG CAA GGA GTG TGG CAC 3'

PCR amplification was performed using high fidelity conditions (Bokert, K.A. and Kunkel, T.A. 1990 Nucleic Acids Research 18 3739-3744). The PCR mixture contained: 20mM TrisHCl (pH 7.3 at 70°C, 50mM KCl, 4mM magnesium chloride, 0.01% gelatin, 1mM each of dATP, dCTP, dGTP and dTTP, 500ng/ml RP41 DNA, 1µM each primer and 50 units/ml Taq polymerase (Cetus/Perkin Elmer, Beaconsfield, Bucks, U.K.). Thirty cycles of PCR were performed with denaturation at 92°C for 1 min, annealing at 60°C for 1 min and extension at 72°C for 1.5 min. This reaction resulted in amplification of a fragment of ca. 1500bp as expected.

fdCAT2 vector DNA (see example 5) was digested with ApaI and XhoI (New England Biolabs) according to manufacturers recommendations, extracted with phenol/chloroform and ethanol precipitated (Sambrook et al, supra). Cloning of amplified RP41 DNA into this vector and identification of the desired clones was performed essentially as in example 7 except that digestion of the PCR product was with ApaI and XhoI. Colonies containing h-PDGF-B-R DNA were identified by probing with 32p labelled RPDGF2 and the presence of an insert in hybridising colonies was confirmed by analytical PCR using RPDGF3 and RPDGF2 using the

conditions described in example 7.

Example 16  
Binding of 125I-PDGF-BB to the Extracellular Domain of  
the Human Receptor for Platelet Derived Growth Factor  
isoform BB Displayed on the Surface of fd Phage.  
Measured using an Immunoprecipitation Assay.

Phage particles, expressing the extracellular domain of the human platelet-derived growth factor isoform BB receptor (fd h-PDGFb-R), were prepared by growing E. coli MC1061 cells transformed with fd h-PDGFb-R in 50 ml of 2xTY medium with 15 µg/ml tetracycline for 16 to 20 hours. Phage particles were concentrated using polyethylene glycol as described in example 6 and resuspended in PDGF-binding buffer (25 mM HEPES, pH 7.4, 0.15 M NaCl, 1 mM magnesium chloride, 0.25% BSA) to 1/33rd of the original volume. Residual bacteria and undissolved material were removed by spinning for 2 min in a microcentrifuge. Immulonucleots using an antiserum raised against gene III protein (Prof. I. Rashed, Konutans, Germany) show the presence in such phage preparations of a geneIII-h-PDGFb-R protein of molecular mass 125000 corresponding to a fusion between h-PDGFb-R external domain (55000 daltons) and geneIII (apparent molecular mass 70000 on SDS-polyacrylamide gel).

Duplicate samples of 35 $\mu$ l concentrated phage were incubated with <sup>125</sup>I-PDGF-BB (78.7 $\mu$ mol, 70nCi, 882Ci/ $\mu$ mol; Amersham International plc, Amersham, Bucks) for 1 hour at 37°C. Controls were included in which <sup>32</sup>P $\alpha$ /BS vector (phage 4) or no phage replaced <sup>32</sup>I-BDGF-BB vector (phage 4). After this incubation, 10 $\mu$ l of sheep anti-M13 polyclonal antiserum (a gift from M. Hobart) was added and incubation continued for 30 min at 20°C. To each sample, 40 $\mu$ l (20 $\mu$ l packed volume) of protein G Sepharose Fast Flow (Pharmacia, Milton Keynes) equilibrated in PDGF binding buffer was added. Incubation was continued for 30 min at 20°C with mixing by end over end inversion on a rotating mixer. The affinity matrix was spun down in a microfuge for 2 min and the supernatant removed by aspiration. Non-specifically bound <sup>125</sup>I-PDGF-BB was removed by resuspension of the pellet in 0.5ml PDGF binding buffer, mixing by rotation for 5 min, centrifugation and aspiration of the supernatant, followed by two further washes with 0.5ml 0.1% BSA, 0.2% Triton-X-100. The pellet finally obtained was resuspended in 100 $\mu$ l PDGF binding buffer and counted in a Beckard gamma counter. For displacement studies, unlabelled PDGF-BB (Amersham International) was added to the stated concentration for the incubation of <sup>125</sup>I-PDGF-BB with phage.

125I-PDGF-BB bound to the fd h-PDGF-B-R phage and was immunoprecipitated in this assay. Specific binding to

receptor phage was 3.5 to 4 times higher than the non-specific binding with vector phage  $\phi$ Trs/BS or no phage (fig. 19). This binding of  $^{125}$ I-PDGF-BB could be displaced by the inclusion of unlabelled PDGF-BB in the incubation with phage at 37°C (fig. 20). At 50nM, unlabelled PDGF-BB the binding of  $^{125}$ I-PDGF-BB was reduced to the same level as the  $\phi$ Trs/BS and no phage control. Figure 21 shows the same data, but with the non-specific binding to vector deducted.

These results indicate that a specific saturable site for 125I-PDGF-BB is expressed on fd phage containing cloned h-PDGFβ-R DNA. Thus, the phage can display the functional extracellular domain of a cell surface receptor.

### Example 17, Construction of Phagemid Containing Conelll fused with the Coding Sequence for a Binding Molecule

It would be useful to improve the transfection efficiency of the phage-binding molecule system and also to have the possibility of displaying different numbers and specificities of binding molecules on the surface of the same bacteriophage. The applicants have devised a method that achieves both aims.

The approach is derived from the phagemid system based on pUC119 [Vieira, J and Warming, J. (1987) *Methods Enzymol.* 153:3]. In brief, gene III from fd-CAT2 (example 5) and gene III *sdv* fusion from fd-CAT2 *sdv* D1.3 (example 2) were cloned downstream of the lac promoter in separate samples of pUC119, in order that the inactivated gene III and gene III fusion could be 'rescued' by M1307 helper phage [Vieira, J and Warming, J. et supra.] prepared according to Sambrooz et al. 1989 supra. The majority of rescued phage would be expected to contain a genome derived from the pUC119 plasmid that contains the binding molecule-gene III fusion and should express varying numbers of the binding molecule on the surfaces up to the normal maximum of 3-5 molecules of gene III of the surface of wild type phage. The system has been exemplified below using an antibody as the binding molecule.

An fdCAW2 containing the single chain Fv form of the bl.3 antilysozyme antibody was formed by digesting fdCAWp1.3 (example 2) with PstI and XhoI, purifying the fragment containing the scFv fragment and ligating this into PstI and XhoI digested fdCAW2. The appropriate clone, called fdCAW2 scFvbl.3 was selected after plating onto 2xTY tetracycline (15µg/ml) and confirmed by restriction enzyme and sequence analysis.

Gene III from *fd*-CAT2 (example 5) and the gene III scFv fusion from *fd*-CAT2 scPD1.3 was PCR-amplified using the primers A and B shown below:

the primase A and B shown below:  
 Primer A: TGC GAA GCT TTG GAG CCT TTT TTT TTG GAG ATT TTC  
 AAC G.

70

Primer B: CAG TGA ATT CCT ATT AAG ACT CCT TAT TAC GCA GTA  
TGT TAG C

Primer A anneals to the 5' end of gene III including the ribosome binding site is located and incorporates a Hind III site. Primer B anneals to the 3' end of gene III at the C-terminus and incorporates two UAA stop codons and an EcoRI site. 100 ng of fd-CAT2 and fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 DNA was used as templates for PCR-amplification in a total reaction volume of 50µl as described in example 7, except that 20 cycles of amplification were performed: 94°C 1 minute, 50°C 1 minute, 72°C 3 minutes. This resulted in amplification of the expected 1.2kb fragment from fd-CAT2 and a 1.8kb fragment from fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3.

The PCR fragments were digested with EcoRI and Hind III, gel-purified and ligated into EcoRI- and Hind III-cut and dephosphorylated pUC119 DNA and transformed into E. coli TGI using standard techniques (Sambrook et al., at supra). Transformed cells were plated on SOB agar (Sambrook et al. 1989 supra) containing 100µg/ml ampicillin and 2% glucose. The resulting clones were called pCAT-3 (derived from fd-CAT2) and pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 (derived from fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3).

Example 18, Rescue of Anti-Lysozyme Antibody Specificity from pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 by M13K07

Single pCAT-3 and pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 colonies were picked into 1.5ml 2TY containing 100µg/ml ampicillin and 2% glucose, and grown 6 hrs at 30°C. 30µl of these stationary cells were added to 6mls 2TY containing 100µg/ml ampicillin and 2% glucose in 50ml polypropylene tubes (Falcon, Becton Dickinson Labware, 1950 Williams Drive, Oxnard, CA, USA) and grown for 1.5 hrs at 30°C at 380rpm in a New Brunswick Orbital Shaker (New Brunswick Scientific Ltd., Edison House 163 Dixons Hill Road, North Mims, Hatfield, UK). Cells were pelleted by centrifugation at 5,000g for 25 minutes and the tubes suspended in tissue paper. The cell pellets were then drained on tissue paper. The cell pellets were then M13K07 bacteriophage added. The mixture was left on ice for 5 minutes followed by growth at 35°C for 45 minutes at 450rpm. A cocktail was then added containing 4µl 100µg/ml ampicillin, 0.5µl 0.1M IPTG and 50µl 10mg/ml kanamycin, and the cultures grown overnight at 35°C, 450rpm.

The following day the cultures were centrifuged and phage particles precipitated as described in example 6. Phage pellets were resuspended in 100µl TE (tris-EDTA see example 6) and phage titred on E. coli TGI. Aliquots of infected cells were plated on 2TY containing either 100µg/ml ampicillin to select for pUC119 phage particles, or 50µg/ml kanamycin to select for the M13 K07 helper phage. Plates were incubated overnight at 37°C and

antibiotic-resistant colonies counted:

DNA	amp <sup>R</sup>	kan <sup>R</sup>
pCAT-3	1.8x10 <sup>11</sup> colonies	1.2x10 <sup>9</sup> colonies
pCAT-3scFv D1.3	2.4x10 <sup>11</sup> colonies	2.0x10 <sup>9</sup> colonies

This shows that the amp<sup>R</sup> phagemid particles are infective and present in the rescued phage population at a 100-fold excess over kan<sup>R</sup> M13K07 helper phage.

Phage were assayed for anti-lysozyme activity by ELISA as described in example 6, with the following modifications:

1) ELISA plates were blocked for 3 hrs with 2% Marvel/PBS.

2) 50µl phage, 400µl 1xPBS and 50µl 20% Marvel were mixed and over and for 20 minutes at room temperature before adding 150µl per well.

3) Phage were left to bind for 2 hours at room temperature.

4) All washes post phage binding were:

2 quick rinses PBS/0.5% Tween 20

3x2 minute washes PBS/0.5% Tween 20

2 quick rinses PBS no detergent

3x2 minute washes PBS no detergent

The result of this ELISA is shown in figure 22, which shows that the antibody specificity can indeed be rescued efficiently.

It is considered a truism of bacterial genetics that when mutant and wild-type proteins are co-expressed in the same cell, the wild-type proteins are co-expressed in same cell, the wild-type protein is used preferentially. This is analogous to the above situation wherein mutant (i.e. antibody fusion) and wild-type gene III proteins (from M13K07) are competing for assembly as part of the pUC119 phagemid particle. It is therefore envisaged that the majority of the resulting pUC 119 phage particles will have fewer gene III-antibody fusion molecules on their surface than is the case for purely phage system described for instance in example 2. Such phagemid antibodies are therefore likely to bind antigen with a lower avidity than fd phage antibodies with three or more copies of the antibody fusion on their surfaces (there is no wild-type gene III, in the system described, for instance, in example 2), and provide a route to production of phage particles with different numbers of the same binding molecule (and hence different acidities for the ligand/antigen) or multiple different binding specificities on their surface, by using helper phage such as M13K07 to rescue cells expressing two or more gene III-antibody fusions.

It is also possible to derive helper phage that do not encode a functional gene III in their genomes (by for example deleting the gene III sequence of a portion of it or by incorporating an amber mutation within the gene).

These defective phages will only grow on appropriate cells (for example that provide functional gene III in trans, or contain an amber suppressor gene), but when used to rescue phage antibodies, will only incorporate the gene III antibody fusion encoded by the phagemid into the released phage particle.

Example 19. Transformation Efficiency of pCAT-3 and pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 phagemids

pUC 19, pCAT-3 and pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 plasmid DNAs, and fdCAT-2 phage DNA was prepared, and used to transform E. coli TG1, pCAT-3 and pCAT-3 scFv D1.3 transformations were plated on SOB agar containing 100 µg/ml ampicillin and 2% glucose, and incubated overnight at 30°C. fdCAT-2 transformations were plated on TY agar containing 15 µg/ml tetracycline and incubated overnight at 37°C. Transformation efficiencies are expressed as colonies per µg of input DNA.

	Transformation efficiency
pUC 19	1.108
pCAT-3	1.108
pCAT-3scFv D1.3	1.108
fd CAT-2	8.105

As expected, transformation of the phagemid vector is approximately 100-fold more efficient than the parental fdCAT-2 vector. Furthermore, the presence of a scFv antibody fragment does not compromise efficiency. This improvement in transformation efficiency is practically useful in the generation of phage antibodies libraries that have large repertoires of different binding specificities.

Example 20  
PCR Assembly of a Single Chain Fv Library from an Immunised Mouse

To demonstrate the utility of phage for the selection of antibodies from repertoires, the first requirement is to be able to prepare a diverse, representative library of the antibody repertoire of an animal and display this repertoire on the surface of bacteriophage fd.

Cytoplasmic RNA was isolated according to example 14 from the pooled spleens of five male Balb/c mice boosted 8 weeks after primary immunisation with 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone (ph OX) coupled to chicken serum albumin. cDNA preparation and PCR assembly of the mouse VH and VL kappa repertoires for phage display was as described in example 14. The molecules thus obtained were ligated into fdCAT2.

Vector fdCAT2 was extensively digested with NotI and ApalI, purified by electrophoresis (Sambrook et al. 1989 supra), and 1 µg ligated to 0.5 µg (5 µg for the hierarchical libraries; see example 22) of the assembled scFv genes in 1 ml with 8000 units T4 DNA ligase (New

England Biolabs). The ligation was carried out overnight at 16°C. Purified ligation mix was electroporated in aliquots into MC1061 cells (W. J. Dower, J. F. Miller & C. W. Ragsdale Nucl. Acids Res. 16 6127-6145 1988) and plated on NZY medium (Sambrook et al. 1989 supra) with 15 µg/ml tetracycline, in 243x243 mm dishes (Nunc); 90-95% of clones contained scFv genes by PCR screening.

Recombinant colonies were screened by PCR (conditions as in example 7, using primers VHBACK and MUKIFONX, MUKIFONX, MUKIFONX and MUKIFONX (see example 14) followed by digestion with the frequent cutting enzyme BstNI (New England Biolabs), used according to the manufacturer's instructions). The library of 2x10<sup>5</sup> clones appeared diverse as judged by the variety of digestion patterns seen in Figure 23, and sequencing revealed the presence of most VH groups (R. Biddrop, Immunol. Today 5 85-86, 1984) and VK subgroups (Kabat, E.A. et al. 1987 supra) (data not shown). None of the 568 clones tested bound to phOx as detected by ELISA as in example 9.

Thus the ability to select antibody provided by the use of phage antibodies (as in example 21) is essential to readily isolate antibodies with antigen binding activity from randomly combined VH and VL domains. Very extensive screening would be required to isolate antigen-binding fragments if the random combinatorial approach of Huse et al. 1989 (supra) were used.

Example 21  
Selection of Antibodies Specific for 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone from a Repertoire Derived from an Immunised Mouse

The library prepared in example 20 was used to demonstrate that ability of the phage system to select antibodies on the basis of their antibody specificity.

None of the 568 clones tested from the unselected library bound to phOx as detected by ELISA.

Screening for binding of the phage to hapten was carried out by ELISA: 96-well plates were coated with 10 µg/ml phOx-BSA or 10 µg/ml BSA in phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) overnight at room temperature. Colonies of phage-transduced bacteria were inoculated into 200 µl 2 x TY with 12.5 µg/ml tetracycline in 96-well plates ('cell wells', Nunc) and grown with shaking (300 rpm) for 24 hours at 37°C. At this stage cultures were saturated and phage titrations were reproducible (10<sup>10</sup> TU/ml). 50 µl phage supernatant, mixed with 50 µl PBS containing 4% skimmed milk powder, was then added to the coated plates. Further details as in example 9.

The library of phages was passed down a phOx affinity column (Table 4A), and eluted with hapten. Colonies from the library prepared in example 22 were scraped into 50 ml 2 x TY medium<sup>3</sup> and shaken at 37°C for 30 min. Liberated phage were precipitated twice with polyethylene glycol and resuspended to 10<sup>10</sup> 2 TU



(transducing units)/ml in water (titred as in example 8). For affinity selection, a 1 ml column of phox-BSA-Sepharose (O. Makela, M. Kaartinen, J.L.T. Peltonen and K. Karjalainen J. Exp. Med. 148 1644-1660, 1978) was washed with 300 ml phosphate-buffered saline (PBS), and 30 ml PBS containing 2% skimmed milk powder (MPBS). 1012 TV phage were loaded in 10 ml MPBS, washed with 10 ml MPBS and finally 200 ml PBS. The bound phage were eluted with 5 ml 1 mM 4-f-amino-caproic acid methylene 2-phenyl-oxazol-5-one (phox-CAP; O. Makela et al. 1978, supra). About 106 TV eluted phage were amplified by infecting 1 ml log phase E.coli TGI and plating as above. For a further round of selection, colonies were scraped into 10 ml 2 x TY medium and then processed as above. Of the eluted clones, 13% were found to bind to phox after the first round selection, and ranged from poor to strong binding in ELISA.

To sequence clones, template DNA was prepared from the supernatants of 10 ml cultures grown for 24 hours, and sequenced using the dideoxy method and a Sequenase kit (USB), with primer LINKFOR (see example 14) for the VH genes and primer fdSEQ1 (5'-GAA TTT TCT GTA TGA GG) for the VK genes. Twenty-three of these hapten-binding clones were sequenced and eight different VH genes (A to H) were found in a variety of pairings with seven different VK genes (a to g) (Fig. 24). Most of the domains, such as VH-B and VK-d were 'promiscuous', able to bind hapten with any of several partners.

The sequences of the V-genes were related to those seen in the secondary response to phox, but with differences (Fig. 24). Thus phox hybridomas from the secondary response employ somatically mutated derivatives of three types of VK genes - Vkoxl, 'Vkox-like' and Vd45.1 genes (C. Berek, G. M. Griffiths & C. Milstain Nature 316 412-418 (1985)). These can pair with VH genes from several groups, from Vkoxl more commonly pairs with the Vhoxl gene (VH group 2, R.Dildrop supra). Vkoxl genes are always, and Vkox-like genes often, found in association with heavy chains (including Vhoxl) and contain a short five residue CDR3, with the sequence motif Asp-X-Gly-X-X in which the central glycine is needed to create a cavity for phox. In the random combinatorial library however, nearly all of the VH genes belonged to group 1, and most of the VK genes were ox-like and associated with VH domains with a five residue CDR3, motif Asp/Asn-X-Gly-X-X (Fig. 24). Vkoxl and Vhoxl were found only once (VK-f and VH-B), and not in combination with each other. Indeed VK-f lacks the Trp91 involved in phox binding and was paired with a VH (VH-C) with a six residue CDR3.

A matrix combination of VH and VK genes was identified in phox-binding clones selected from this

random combinational library. The number of clones found with each combination are shown in Fig. 25. The binding to phox-BSA, as judged by the ELISA signal, appeared to vary (marked by shading in Fig. 25). No binding was seen to BSA alone.

A second round of selection of the original, random combinational library from immune mice resulted in 93% of eluted clones binding phox (Table 4). Most of these clones were VK-d combinations, and bound strongly to phox in ELISA (data not shown). Few weak binders were seen. This suggested that affinity chromatography had not only enriched for binders, but also for the best.

Fluorescence quench titrations determined the Kd of VH-B/VK-d for phox-GABA as  $10^{-8}$  M (example 23), indicating that antibodies with affinities representative of the secondary response can be selected from secondary responses, only two (out of eleven characterized) secrete antibodies of a higher affinity than VH-B/VK-d (C. Berek et al. 1985 supra). The Kd of VH-B/VK-b for phox-GABA was determined as  $10^{-5}$  M (example 23). Thus phage bearing scFv fragments with weak affinities can be selected with antigen, probably due to the avidity of the multiple antibody heads on the phage.

This example shows that antigen specificities can be isolated from libraries derived from immunised mice. It will often be desired to express these antibodies in a soluble form for further study and for use in therapeutic and diagnostic applications. Example 23 demonstrates determination of the affinity of soluble scFv fragments selected using phage antibodies. Example 27 demonstrates that soluble fragments have similar properties to those displayed on phage. For many purposes it will be desired to construct and express an antibody molecule which contains the FC portions of the heavy chain, and perhaps vary the immunoglobulin isotype. To accomplish this, it is necessary to subclone the antigen binding sites identified using the phage selection system into a vector for expression in mammalian cells, using methodology similar to that described by Orlandi, R. et al. (1989, supra). For instance, the VH and VL genes could be amplified separately by PCR with primers containing appropriate restriction sites and inserted into vectors such as pBV-gpt HuGgi (L. Riechmann et al Nature 332 323-327), 1988) which allows expression of the VH domain as part of a heavy chain IgG1 isotype and pSV-hyg HuCR which allows expression of the VL domain attached to the K light chain constant region. Furthermore, fusions of VH and VL domains can be made with genes encoding non-immunoglobulin proteins, for example, enzymes.

Example 22

Generation of Further Antibody Specificities by the Assembly of Hierarchical Libraries



Further antibody specificities were derived from the library prepared and screened in examples 20 and 21 using a hierarchical approach.

The promiscuity of the VH-B and VK-d domains prompted the applicants to force further pairings, by assembling these genes with the entire repertoires of either VK or VH genes from the same immunised mice. The resulting 'hierarchical' libraries, (VH-B x VK-rep and VH-rep x VK-d), each with 4x10<sup>6</sup> members, were subjected to a round of selection and heptan-binding clones isolated (Table 4). As shown by ELISA, most were strong binders. By sequencing twenty-four clones from each library, the applicants identified fourteen new partners for VH-B and thirteen for VK-d (Fig. 24). Apart from VH-B and VK-c, none of the previous partners (or indeed other clones) from the random combinatorial library was isolated again. Again the VK genes were mainly ox-like and the VH genes mainly group 1 (as defined in Dildrop, R. 1984 *supra*), but the only examples of V<sub>H</sub>ox1 (VK-h, -p, -q and -r) have Trp91, and the VH-CDR3 motif Asp-X-Gly-X-X now predominates. Thus some features of the phox hybridomas seemed to emerge more strongly in the hierarchical library. The new partners differed from each other mainly by small alterations in the CDRs, indicating that much of the subtle diversity had remained untapped by the random combinatorial approach. More generally it has been shown that a spectrum of related antibodies can be made by keeping one of the partners fixed and varying the other, and this could prove invaluable for fine tuning of antibody affinity and specificity.

Therefore, again, phage antibodies allow a greater range of antibody molecules to be analysed for desired properties.

This example, and example 21, demonstrate the isolation of individual antibody specificities through display on the surface of phage. However, for some purposes it may be more desirable to have a mixture of antibodies, equivalent to a polyclonal antiserum (for instance, for immunoprecipitation). To prepare a mixture of antibodies, one could mix clones and express soluble antibodies or antibody fragments or alternatively select clones from a library to give a highly enriched pool of genes encoding antibodies or antibody fragments directed against a ligand of interest and express antibodies from these clones.

Example 23

#### Selection of Antibodies Displayed on Bacteriophage with Different Affinities for 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone using Affinity Chromatography

The ELISA data shown in example 21 suggested that affinity chromatography had not only enriched the binders, but also for the best. To confirm this, the

binding affinities of a strong binding and a weak binding phage were determined and then demonstrated that they could be separated from each other using affinity chromatography.

Clones VH-B/VK-b and VH-B/VK-d were reamplified with MJK1FONX, MJK2FONX, MJK4FONX and MJK5FONX (see example 14) and VTI1BACK-Sfil (5'-TCG CGG CCC AGC CGG CCA TGG CC(G/C) AGG T(C/G)(A/C) A(A/G)C TGC AG(C/G) AGT C(A/T)G G), a primer that introduces an Sfil site (underlined) at the 5' end of the VH gene. VH-B/VK-d was cloned into a phagemid 'a.g.' pJMI (a gift from A. Griffiths and J. Marks) as an Sfil-NotI cassette, downstream of the p<sub>HL</sub> leader for periplasmic secretion (M. Better *et al.* *supra*), with a C-terminal peptide tag for detection (see example 24 and figure), and under the control of a P<sub>1</sub> promoter (H. Shimatake & M. Rosenberg Nature 292 128-132 1981). The phagemid should have the following features: a) unique Sfil and NotI restriction sites downstream of a p<sub>HL</sub> leader; b) a sequence encoding a C-terminal peptide tag for detection; and c) a P<sub>1</sub> promoter controlling expression. 10 litre cultures of E.coli M4830-1 (M. E. Gottesman, S. Adhya & A. Das J.Mol.Biol 140 57-75 1980) harbouring each phagemid were induced as in K. Nagai & H. C. Thogerson (Methods Enzymol 153 461-481 1987) and supernatants precipitated with 50% ammonium sulphate. The resuspended precipitate was dialysed into PBS + 0.2 mM EDTA (PBSE), loaded onto a 1.5ml column of phox-Sepharose and the column washed sequentially with 100 ml PBS; 100 ml 0.1 M Tris-HCl, 0.5 M NaCl, pH 8.0; 10ml 50 mM citrate, pH 5.0; 10 ml 50 mM citrate, pH 4.0, and 20 ml 50 mM glycine, pH 3.0. scFv fragments were eluted with 50 mM glycine, pH 2.0, neutralised with Tris base and dialysed against PBSE. VH-B/VK-b was cloned into a phagemid vector based on pUC119 encoding identical signal and tag sequences to pJMI, and expression induced at 30°C in a 10 litre culture of E.coli TGI harbouring the phagemid as in D. de Bellis & I. Schwartz (1980 Nucleic Acids Res 18 1311). The low affinity of clone VH-B/VK-b made its purification on phox-Sepharose impossible. Therefore after concentration by ultrafiltration (Filtron, Flowgen), the supernatant (100 ml of 600 ml) was loaded onto a 1 ml column of protein A-Sepharose coupled (B. Harlow & D. Lane 1988 *supra*) to the monoclonal antibody 9E10 (Evan, G. I. *et al.* Mol.Cell Biol. 5 3610-3616 1985) that recognises the peptide tag. The column was washed with 200 ml PBS and 50 ml PBS made 0.5 M in NaCl. scFv fragments were eluted with 100 ml 0.2M glycine, pH 3.0, with neutralisation and dialysis as before.

The K<sub>d</sub> (1.0 ± 0.2 × 10<sup>-8</sup> M) for clone VH-B/VK-d was determined by fluorescence quench titration with 4-2-amino-butyric acid methylene 2-phenyl-oxazol-5-one (phox-

GABA Co. Mokele et al., 1978 supra). Excitation was at 280 nm, emission was monitored at 340 nm and the  $K_d$  calculated. The  $K_d$  of the low affinity clone VH-B/VK-b was determined as  $1.8 \pm 0.3 \times 10^{-5}$  M (not shown). To minimise light adsorption by the higher concentrations of phox-GABA required, excitation was at 260 nm and emission was monitored at 304 nm. In addition the fluorescence values were divided by those from a parallel titration of the lysosyme binding Fv fragment D1.3. The value was calculated as in H. N. Eisen Meth. Med. Res. 10 115-121 1964. A mixture of clones VH-B/VK-b and VH-B/VK-d, 7x10<sup>10</sup> TU phage in the ratio 20 VH-B/VK-b : 1 VH-B/VK-d were loaded onto a phox-BSA-Sepharose column in 10 ml MPBS and eluted as above. Eluted phage were used to reinfect E. coli TG1, and phage produced and harvested as before. Approximately 10<sup>11</sup> TU phage were loaded onto a second affinity column and the process repeated to give a total of three column passes. Dilutions of eluted phage at each stage were plated in duplicate and probed separately with oligonucleotides specific for VK-b (5'GAG CCG GTA ACC ACT GTA CT) or VK-d (5'-GAA TGG TAT ACT ACC CT). After these two rounds, essentially all the eluted phage were VH-B/VK-d (table 4). Therefore phage antibodies can be selected on the basis of the antigen affinity of the antibody displayed.

**Example 24**  
Construction of Phagemid PHEN1 for the Expression of Antibody Fragments Expressed on the Surface of Bacteriophage Following Superinfection

The phagemid PHEN1 (figure 26) is a derivative of pUC119 (Vieira, J. & Messing, J. Methods Enzymol 153 pp 3-11, 1987). The coding region of g3p from fdCAT2, including signal peptide and cloning sites, was amplified by PCR, using primers G3FUPO and G3FUBA (given below) (which contain EcoRI and HindIII sites respectively), and cloned as a HindIII-EcoRI fragment into pUC119. The HindIII-NotI fragment encoding the g3p signal sequence was the replaced by a pelB signal peptide (Better, M. et al. Science 240 1041-1043, 1988) with an internal SfiI site, allowing antibody genes to be cloned as fli-NotI fragments. A peptide tag, c-myc, (Munro, S. & Pelham, H. Cell 46 291-300, 1986) was introduced directly after the NotI site by cloning an oligonucleotide cassette, and followed by an amber codon introduced by site-directed mutagenesis using an in vitro mutagenesis kit (Amersham International) (figure 26b).

G3FUPO, 5'-CAG TGA ATT CTT ATT AAG ACT CCT TAT TAC GCA GTA TGT TAG C;  
G3FUBA, 5'-TGC GAA GCT TTG GAG CCT TTT TTT TTT GAG ATT TTC AAC G;

**Example 25**  
Display of Single Chain Fv and Fab Fragments Derived from the Anti-Oxazolone Antibody NQ10.12.5 on Bacteriophage fd using PHEN1 and fdCAT2

A range of constructs (see figure 27) were made from a clone (essentially construct II in pUC19) designed for expression in bacteria of a soluble Fab fragment (Better et al., 1988, see above) from the mouse anti-phox (2-phenyl-5-oxazolone) antibody NQ10.12.5 (Griffiths, G. M. et al. Nature 312, 271-275, 1984). In construct II, the V-regions are derived from NQ10.12.5 and attached to human C $\kappa$  and C $\lambda$  (J1 isotype) constant domains. The C-terminal cysteine residues, which normally form a covalent link between light and heavy antibody chains, have been deleted from both the constant domains. To clone heavy and light chain genes together as Fab fragments (construct II) or as separate chains (constructs III and IV) for phage display, DNA was amplified from construct II by PCR to introduce a NotI restriction site at the 3' end, and at the 5' end either an ApalI site (for cloning into fd-CAT2) or SfiI site (for cloning into PHEN1). The primers FABNOTFOK with VH1BACKAPA (or VH1BACKSFI15) were used for PCR amplification of genes encoding Fab fragments (construct II), the primers FABNOTFOH with VH1BACKAPA (or VH1BACKSFI15) for heavy chains (construct III), and the primers FABNOTFOK and MVBKAPA (or MVBKASFI) for light chains (construct IV).

The single-chain Fv version of NQ10.12.5 (construct I) has the heavy (VH) and light chain (VK) variable domains joined by a flexible linker (Oly<sub>4</sub>gar)<sub>3</sub> (Huston, J. S. et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 85 5879-5883, 1988) and was constructed from construct II by 'splicing by overlap extension' as in example 14. The assembled genes were reamplified with primers VK3F2NOT and VH1BACKAPA (or VH1BACKSFI15) to append restriction sites for cloning into fd-CAT2 (ApalI-NotI) or PHEN1 (SfiI-NotI).

VH1BACKAPA, 5'-CAT GAC CAC AGT GCA CAG GT(C/G) (A/C)(A/G) CTG CAG (C/G)AG TC(A/T) GG;

VH1BACKSFI15, 5'-CAT GGC ACT CGC GGC CCA GGC GGC CAT GGC C(C/G)A GGT (C/G)(A/C)A (A/G)CT GCA G(C/G)A GTC (A/T)GG;

FABNOTFOH, 5'-CCA CGA TTC TGC GGC GGC TGA AGA TTT GGG CTC AAC TTT CTT GTC GAC;

FABNOTFOK, 5'-CCA CGA TTC TGC GGC GGC TGA CTC TCC GCG GTT GAA GCT CTT TGT GAC;

MVBKAPA, 5'-CAC AGT GCA CTC GAC ATT GAG CTC ACC CAG TCT CCA;

MVBKASFI, 5'-CAT GAC CAC GCG GCC CAG CCG AGT GGC GAC

ATT GAG CTC ACC CAG TCT CCA/  
 VK3F2NOT, 5'-TTC TGC GCC CCG CCG TTT CAG CTC GAG CTT GGT  
 CCC.

Restriction sites are underlined.

5 Rescued of Phage and Phagemid particles  
 Constructs I-IV (figure 27) were introduced into both fd-  
 CAT2 and pHEM1. Phage fd-CAT2 (and fd-CAT2-I, II, III or  
 IV) was taken from the supernatant of infected E.coli TGI  
 after shaking at 37°C overnight in 2xTY medium with  
 12.5µg/ml tetracycline, and used directly in ELISA.  
 10 Phagemid pHEM1 (and pHEM1-I and II) in E.coli TGI (supE)  
 were grown overnight in 2 ml 2xTY medium, 100 µg/ml  
 ampicillin, and 1% glucose (without glucose, expression  
 of g3p prevents later superinfection by helper phage).  
 15 10µl of the overnight culture was used to inoculate 2 ml  
 of 2xTY medium, 100µg/ml ampicillin, 1% glucose, and  
 shaken at 37°C for 1 hour. The cells were washed and  
 resuspended in 2xTY, 100 µg/ml ampicillin, and phagemid  
 particles rescued by adding 2 µl (10<sup>6</sup>pfu) VCSM13 helper  
 20 phage (Stratagene). After growth for one hour, 4µl  
 kanamycin (25 mg/ml) was added, and the culture grown  
 overnight. The phagemid particles were concentrated 10-  
 fold for ELISA by precipitation with polyethylene glycol.  
 ELISA

25 Detection of phage binding to 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone (phOx)  
 was performed as in example 9. 96-well plates were  
 coated with 10 µg/ml phOx-BSA or 10 µg/ml BSA in PBS  
 overnight at room temperature, and blocked with PBS  
 containing 2% skimmed milk powder. Phage (mid)  
 30 supernatant (50 µl) mixed with 50 µl PBS containing 4%  
 skimmed milk powder was added to the wells and assayed.  
 To detect binding of soluble scFv or Fab fragments  
 secreted from pHEM1, the c-myc peptide tag described by  
 Munro and Pelham 1986 supra, was detected using the anti-  
 35 myc monoclonal 9E10 (Rvan, G. I. et al. Mol Cell Biol 5  
 3610-3616, 1985) followed by detection with peroxidase-  
 conjugated goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin. Other details  
 are as in example 9.

40 The constructs in fdCAT2 and pHEM1 display antibody  
 fragments of the surface of filamentous phage. The phage  
 vector, fd-CAT2 (figure 8) is based on the vector fd-tet  
 (Zachar, A. N. et al. Gene 9 127-140, 1980) and has  
 45 restriction sites (ApaI and NotI) for cloning antibody  
 genes (or other protein) genes for expression as fusions  
 to the N-terminus of the phage coat protein g3p.  
 Transcription of the antibody-g3p fusions in fd-CAT2 is  
 driven from the gene III promoter and the fusion protein  
 targetted to the periplasm by means of the g3p leader.  
 50 Fab abd scFv fragments of NQ10.12.5 cloned into fd-CAT2  
 for display were shown to bind to phOx-BSA (but not BSA)  
 by ELISA (table 5). Phage were considered to be binding  
 if A405 of the sample was at least 10-fold greater than

the background in ELISA.

The phagemid vector, pHEM1 (fig. 26), is based upon  
 pUC119 and contains restriction sites (SfiI and NotI) for  
 5 cloning the fusion proteins. Here the transcription of  
 antibody-g3p fusions is driven from the inducible lacZ  
 promoter, and the fusion protein targetted to the  
 periplasm by means of the phOx leader. Phagemid was  
 10 rescued with VCSM13 helper phage in 2xTY medium  
 containing no glucose or IPTG; under these conditions  
 there is sufficient expression of antibody-g3p. Fab and  
 scFv fragments of NQ10.12.5 cloned into pHEM1 for display  
 were shown to bind to phOx-BSA (but not BSA) by ELISA  
 (Table 6) using the same criterion as above.

An alternative methodology for preparing libraries  
 15 of Fab fragments expressed on the surface of phage would  
 be to:

1. Prepare a library of phage expressing heavy chain  
 (VHC) genes from inserts in the phage genome.  
 2. Prepare a library of light chain genes in a plasmid  
 20 expression vector in E.coli, preferably a phagemid, and  
 isolate the soluble protein light chains expressed from  
 this library.

3. Bind the soluble protein light chains from the  
 library to the heavy chain library displayed on phage.

4. Select phage with the desired properties of affinity  
 and specificity.

These will encode the heavy chain (VHC) genes.

5. Isolate the light chain genes encoding light chains  
 which form suitable antigen binding sites in combination  
 30 with the selected heavy chains, preferably by using  
 superinfection of bacteria, containing phagemid expressing  
 the light chain, with phage expressing the selected heavy  
 chain (as described in example 20) and then assaying for  
 antigen binding.

Example 26  
 35 Rescued of Phagemid Encoding a Gene III Protein Fusion  
 With Antibody Heavy or Light Chains by Phage Encoding the  
 Complementary Antibody Chain Displayed on Phage and the  
 Use of this Technique to Make Dual Combinatorial  
 40 Libraries

With random combinatorial libraries there is a  
 limitation on the potential diversity of displayed Fab  
 fragments due to the transformation efficiency of  
 45 bacterial cells. Described here is a strategy (dual  
 combinatorial libraries) to overcome this problem,  
 potentially increasing the number of phage surveyed by a  
 factor of 10.

For assembly of heavy and light chains expressed  
 from different vectors, phagemid (pHEM1-III or IV) was  
 50 grown in E.coli HB2151 (a non-suppressor strain) to allow  
 production of soluble chains, and rescued as above  
 (example 27) except that helper phage were used

expressing partner chains as fusions to g3p (10<sup>9</sup> TU fd-CAR2-IV or III respectively) and 2  $\mu$ l tetracycline (12.5 mg/ml) in place of kanamycin.

#### Separate Vectors to Encode Fab Heavy and Light Chains

The heavy and light chains of Fab fragments can be encoded together in the same vector (example 25) or in different vectors. To demonstrate this the heavy chain (construct III) was cloned into pHEM1 (to provide soluble fragments) and the light chain (construct IV) into fd-CAR2 (to make the fusion with g3p). The phagemid pHEM1-III, grown in E. coli HB2151 (non-suppressor) was rescued with fd-CAR2-IV phage, and phage(mid) shown to bind to phOx:BSA, but not to BSA (Table 5). This demonstrates that soluble light chain is correctly associating with the heavy chain anchored to the g3p, since neither heavy chain nor light chain alone bind antigen (Table 5).

Similar results were obtained in the reverse experiment (with phagemid pHEM1-IV and fd-CAR2-III phage) in which the heavy chain was produced as a soluble molecule and the light chain anchored to g3p (Table 5). Hence a Fab fragment is assembled on the surface of phage by fusion of either heavy or light chain to g3p, provided the other chain is secreted using the same or another vector (figure 28).

The resulting phage population is a mixture of phage abd rescued phagemid. The ratio of the two types of particle was assessed by infecting log phase E. coli TGI and plating on TYE plates with either 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline (to select for fd-CAR2) or 100  $\mu$ g/ml ampicillin (to select for pHEM1). The titre of fd-CAR2 phage was 5 x 10<sup>11</sup> TU/ml and the titre of pHEM1 2 x 10<sup>10</sup> TU/ml, indicating a packaging ratio of 25 phage per phagemid.

Demonstrated here is an alternative strategy involving display of the heterodimeric antibody Fab fragments on the surface of phage. One of the chains is fused to g3p and the other is secreted in soluble form into the periplasmic space of the E. coli where it associates non-covalently with the g3p fusion, and binds specifically to antigen. Either the light or heavy chain can be fused to the g3p; they are displayed on the phage as Fab fragments and bind antigen (figure 28). Described here are both phage and phagemid vectors for surface display. Phagemids are probably superior to phage vectors for creation of large phage display libraries. Particularly in view of their higher transfection efficiencies (two to three orders of magnitude higher), allowing larger libraries to be constructed. The phagemid vector, pHEM1 also allows the expression of soluble Fab fragments in non-suppressor E. coli.

Also demonstrated here is that heavy and light

chains encoded on the same vector (construct II), or on different vectors (constructs III and IV) can be displayed as Fab fragments. This offers two distinct ways of making random combinatorial libraries for display. Libraries of heavy and light chain genes, amplified by PCR, could be randomly linked by a 'PCR assembly' process (example 14) based on 'splicing by overlap extension', cloned into phage(mid) display vectors and expressed from the same promoter as part of the same transcript (construct II) as above, or indeed from different promoters as separate transcripts. Here the phage(mid) vector encodes and displays both chains. For a combinatorial library of 10<sup>7</sup> heavy chains and 10<sup>7</sup> light chains, the potential diversity of displayed Fab fragments (10<sup>14</sup>) is limited by the transfection efficiency of bacterial cells by the vector (about 10<sup>6</sup> clones per  $\mu$ g cut and ligated plasmid at best) (W.J. Dower et al Nucl. Acids. Res. 16 6127-6145, 1988). Libraries thus prepared are analogous to the random combinatorial library method described by Huse, W.D. et al Science 246 1275-1281 (1989), but have the important additional feature that display on the surface of phage gives a powerful method of selecting antibody specificities from the large number of clones generated.

Alternatively, libraries of heavy and light chains could be cloned into different vectors for expression in the same cell, with a phage vector encoding the g3p fusion and a phagemid encoding the soluble chain. The phage acts as a helper, and the infected bacteria produced both packaged phage and phagemid. Each phage or phagemid displays both chains but encodes only one chain and thus only the genetic information for half of the antigen-binding site. However, the genes for both antibody chains can be recovered separately by plating on the selective medium, suggesting a means by which mutually complementary pairs of antigen binding heavy and light chain combinations could be selected from random combinatorial libraries. For example, a light chain repertoire on fd phage could be used to infect calls harbouring a library of soluble heavy chains on the phagemid. The affinity purified phagemid library could then be used to infect E. coli, rescued with the affinity purified phage library, and the new combinatorial library subjected to a further round of selection. Thus, each round of purification. Finally, after several rounds, infected bacteria could be plated and screened individually for antigen-binding phage. Such 'dual' combinatorial libraries are potentially more diverse than those encoded on a single vector. By combining separate libraries of 10<sup>7</sup> light chain phage(mid)s, the diversity of displayed Fab fragments (potentially 10<sup>14</sup>) is limited

only by the number of bacteria ( $10^{12}$  per litre). More simply, the use of two vectors should also facilitate the construction of 'hierarchical' libraries, in which a fixed heavy or light chain is paired with a library of partners (example 22), offering a means of 'fine-tuning' antibody affinity and specificity.

#### Example 27 Induction of Soluble scFv and Fab Fragments using Phagemid pHEN1

Further study of antibodies which have been expressed on the surface of phage would be greatly facilitated if it is simple to switch to expression in solution.

E.coli HB2151 was infected with pHEN phagemid (pHEN1-I or II), and plated on YTE, 100µg/ml ampicillin plates. Colonies were shaken at 37°C in 2xTY medium, 100 µg/ml ampicillin, 1% glucose to OD<sub>550</sub>=0.5 to 1.0. Cells were pelleted, washed once in 2xTY medium, resuspended in medium with 100 µg/ml ampicillin, 1 mM isopropyl β-D-thiogalactoside (IPTG), and grown for a further 16 hours. Cells were pelleted and the supernatant, containing the secreted chains, used directly in ELISA.

The phagemid pHEN1 has the advantage over phage fd-CAT2, in that antibody can be produced either for phage display (by growth in sup8 strains of E.coli) or as a tagged soluble fragment (by growth in non-suppressor strains), as a peptide tag (example 24) and an amber codon were introduced between the antibody and gp3. Secretion of soluble Fab fragments from pHEN1-II or scFv fragments from pHEN1-I was demonstrated after growth in E.coli HB2151 and induction with IPTG using Western blots (Figure 29). For detection of secreted proteins, 10µl supernatant of induced cultures were subjected to SDS-PAGE and proteins transferred by electroblotting to Immobilon-P (Millipore). Soluble heavy and light chain were detected with goat polyclonal anti-human Fab antiserum (Sigma) and peroxidase conjugated rabbit anti-goat immunoglobulin (Sigma), each at a dilution of 1:1000. The tagged VK domain was detected with 9E10 antibody (1:1000) and peroxidase conjugated goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin (Fc specific) (1:1000) (Sigma) or with a peroxidase labelled anti-human CK antiserum (Dako). 3,3'-diaminobenzidine (DAB/Sigma) was used as peroxidase substrate (Harlow E., et al. 1988 Supr). With the scFv, the fragments were detected using the 9E10 anti-ayo tag antibody (data not shown). With the Fab, only the light chain was detected by 9E10 (or anti-human CK) antibody, as expected, while the anti-human Fab antiserum detected both heavy and light chains. Binding of the soluble scFv and Fab fragments to pHex-BSA (but not to BSA) was also demonstrated by ELISA (Table 5B). Thus scFv and Fab fragments can be displayed on phage or

secreted as soluble fragments from the same phagemid vector.

#### Example 28 Increased Sensitivity in ELISA assay of Lysozyme using FDTscFvD1.3 as Primary Antibody Compared to Soluble scFvD1.3

In principle the use of phage antibodies should allow more sensitive immunoassays to be performed than with soluble antibodies. Phage antibodies combine the ability to bind a specific antigen with the potential for amplification through the presence of multiple (ca.2800) copies of the major coat protein (gp8p) on each virion. This would allow the attachment of several antibody molecules directed against M13 to each virion followed by the attachment of several molecules of peroxidase-conjugated anti-species antibody (anti-sheep) IgG in the case below. Thus for every phage antibody bound to antigen there is the potential for attaching several peroxidase molecules whereas when a soluble antibody is used as the primary antibody this amplification will not occur.

ELISA plates were coated overnight at room temperature using 200µl of 10 fold dilutions of hen egg lysozyme (1000, 100, 10, 1, 0.1 and 0.01 µg/ml) in 50mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, pH9.6. ELISA was performed as described in example 4 except that (i) incubation with anti-lysozyme antibody was with either FDTscFvD1.3 (phb; 10<sup>10</sup> phage per well; 1.6mol) or soluble affinity purified scFvD1.3 (18µg per well; 0.7µmol) (ii) incubation with second antibody was with 1/100 dilution of sheep anti-M13 serum for FDTscFvD1.3 samples or with or 1/100 dilution of rabbit anti-scFvD1.3 serum (from S. Ward) for soluble scFvD1.3 samples (iii) peroxidase-conjugated rabbit anti-goat immunoglobulin (Sigma; 1/5000) was used for FDTscFvD1.3 samples and peroxidase-conjugated goat anti-rabbit immunoglobulin (Sigma; 1/5000) was used for soluble scFvD1.3 samples. Absorbance at 405nm was measured after 15h. The results are shown in Figures 30 and 31. In these figures lysozyme concentrations for coating are shown on a log scale of dilutions relative to 1µg/ml (i.e. log = -3 -1mg/ml; log = -2 = 0.01 µg/ml).

Higher signals were obtained with FDTscFvD1.3 at all concentrations of lysozyme (Fig.31) but the difference was very marked at the greatest dilutions, where antigen quantities are most limiting (Figs. 30 and 31). This suggests that phage antibodies may be particularly valuable for sandwich type assays where the capture of small amounts of antigen by the primary antibody will generate an amplified signal when phage antibodies directed against a different epitope are used as the second antigen binding antibody.

#### Example 29

Direct Rescue and Expression of Mouse Monoclonal Antibodies as Single Chain Fv Fragments on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd.

The principle is very similar to that described in example 14. It consists of the PCR assembly of single chain antibodies from cDNA prepared from mouse monoclonals. As an example, the rescue and expression of two such antibodies from monoclonals expressing antibodies against the steroid hormone oestradiol is described.

#### A. RNA Preparation

RNA can be prepared using many procedures well known to those skilled in the art. In this example, the use of Triton X-100 lysis, phenol/SDS RNase inactivation gave excellent results.

1. The mouse monoclonal cells that were used here had been harvested by centrifugation and resuspended in serum free medium. They were then centrifuged and resuspended in saline and after a final centrifugation step, resuspended in sterile water at  $1 \times 10^7$  cells per ml. (Normally cells would be washed in PBS buffer and finally resuspended in PBS buffer, but these particular cells were supplied to us as described frozen in water.).

2. To 750  $\mu$ l of cells was added 250  $\mu$ l of ice cold 4X lysis buffer (40mM Tris HCl pH 7.4/4mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>/600mM NaCl/40mM VBC (Veronyl ribosyl complex)/2% Triton X-100). The suspension was mixed well and left on ice for 5 minutes.

3. Centrifugation was carried out at 4°C in a microfuge at 13000 rpm for 5 min.

The supernatant is then phenol extracted three times, phenol chloroform extracted three times and finally, ethanol precipitated as described in the materials and methods. The precipitate was resuspended in 50  $\mu$ l water.

4. The optical density of the RNA at 260nm with a 2.5  $\mu$ l sample in 1ml water was measured. The RNA was checked by electrophoresis of a 2  $\mu$ g sample on a 1% agarose gel. RNA in the range of 32  $\mu$ g to 42  $\mu$ g was obtained by this method.

#### B. cDNA Preparation

The method used is the same as that described in example 14. Two cDNA preparations were made. These were from RNA extracted from the monoclonals known as cell lines 013 and 014 which both express antibodies against the steroid hormone, oestradiol.

#### C. Primary PCRs

The method used is essentially the same as that described in example 14. The VH region was amplified with the primers VH1BACK and VH1FOR-2. For the VKappa region, four separate reactions were carried out using the primer VK2BACK and with MJK1FONX, MJK2FONX, MJK4FONX or MJK5FONX. Samples (5  $\mu$ l) were checked on a 1.5% agarose gel. From this it was observed that for

cDNA prepared from the two oestradiol monoclonals the primers VK2BACK and MJK1FONX gave the best amplification of the VKappa region. The VH bands and the VKappa bands amplified with VK2BACK/MJK1FONX were purified on 2% low melting point agarose gels for each monoclonal. The DNA bands were excised from the gel and purified using a dedicated GeneClean kit as described in example 14.

#### D. Preparation of linker

The method used is essentially the same as that described in example 14. In this case, the amplified linker DNA was purified on a 2% agarose gel and recovered from the gel with a dedicated "Marmaid" kit (BIO 101, GeneClean, La Jolla, San Diego, California, USA) using the manufacturers instructions.

#### E. Assembly PCRs

The method used is essentially the same as that described in example 14. In this case, the assembled PCR product was purified on a 2% agarose gel and recovered from the gel with a dedicated "Marmaid" kit.

#### F. Adding restriction sites and work-up

The assembled product was "tagged" with Apa LI and Not I restriction sites. The DNA was then digested with Apa LI and Not I to give the appropriate sticky ends for cloning and then purified on a 2% low melting point agarose gel and extracted using a GeneClean kit. The method used is the same as that described in example 14.

#### G. Cloning into Vector fd-CAT2

A total of 15  $\mu$ g of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  purified fd-CAT2 DNA was digested with 100 units of the restriction enzyme Not I (New England Biolabs) in a total volume of 200  $\mu$ l 1X NEB Not I buffer with 1X NEB acetylated BSA for a total of 3 hours at 37°C. The vector DNA was the treated twice with 15  $\mu$ l Strataclean (a commercially available resin for the removal of protein), following the manufacturers instructions (Stratagene, 11099 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, California, USA). The DNA was then ethanol precipitated and redissolved in TE buffer (Sambrook et al., 1989 supra). The DNA was then digested with 100 units of the restriction enzyme Apa LI (New England Biolabs) in a total volume of 200  $\mu$ l 1X NEB Buffer 4 overnight at 37°C. The vector was then purified with a Chroma Spin 1000 column following the manufacturers instructions (Clontech Laboratories Inc, 4030 Fabian way, Palo Alto, California, USA). This step removes the Apa LI/Not I fragment to give out vector DNA for maximum ligation efficiency.

Ligation reactions were carried out with 2.5-10  $\mu$ g of the DNA insert and 10  $\mu$ g of vector in a total volume of 10  $\mu$ l of 1X NEB ligase buffer with 1  $\mu$ l of NEB ligase (New England Biolabs) at 16°C overnight (approx 16 hours).

#### H. Transformation and growth

E. coli strain TGI was made competent and transformed

with the fdCAT2 recombinant DNA as described by Sambrook et al, 1989 Supra. The cells were plated out on LBtet plates (10g tryptone, 5g yeast extract, 10g NaCl, 15g bacto-agar per litre with 15ug/ul of tetracycline added just before pouring the plates) and grown overnight.

Single wall isolated colonies were then inoculated into 10 ml of LBtet broth (LB medium with 15ug/ul of tetracycline) in 50 ml tubes. After overnight growth at 35°C/350rpm in a bench top centrifuge. The supernatants were transferred to 15 ml centrifuge tubes and 2ml 20% PEG 8000/2.5M NaCl added to each. After incubating at room temperature for 20-30 minutes, the recombinant phage was pelleted by centrifugation at 9000rpm in a Sorval SM24 rotor for 30 minutes. The PEG supernatant was discarded. Any remaining PEG was removed with a pasteur pipette after a brief (2 minutes) centrifugation step. This last step was repeated to make sure that no PEG remained. The phage pellet was then resuspended in 500ul PBS buffer. This was transferred to a microcentrifuge tube and spun at 13000 rpm to remove any remaining cells. The phage supernatant was transferred to a fresh tube.

#### 1. Assay for antibody expression

Bacteriophage fd recombinants were screened for the expression of antibody against oestrinol by ELISA. This method is described in example 6. In this case the following alterations are relevant.

1. Microtitre plates were coated overnight with 40ug/ml oestrinol-6 carboxymethylloxime-BSA (Steraloids, 31 Radcliffe Road, Croydon, CR0 5QJ, England).

2. 1st antibody was the putative phage anti oestrinol antibody. 50ul of phage in a final volume of 200ul of sterile PBS combining 0.25% gelatin was added to each well.

3. 2nd antibody was sheep anti M13 at 1:1000 dilution.

4. 3rd antibody was peroxidase conjugated rabbit anti goat immunoglobulin.

Recombinants expressing functional antibody were detected by incubation with the chromogenic substrate 2,2' azinobis (3-ethyl benzthiazoline sulphonic acid). The results are shown in figures 32 and 33.

#### Example 30

#### Kinetic Properties of Alkaline Phosphatase Displayed on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd

This example demonstrates that kinetic properties of an enzyme expressed on phage are qualitatively similar to those in solution. Bacteriophage fd displaying alkaline phosphatase fusions of gene 3 with either the native arginine (see example 31) or the mutant residue alanine at position 166 (see example 1:) were prepared by PEG precipitation as described in the materials and methods.

The kinetic parameters of alkaline phosphatase expressed on the surface of fd phage were investigated in

1M Tris/HCl, pH8.0 at 20°C with 1mM 4-nitrophenyl phosphate as substrate. The reactions were initiated by the addition of 100ul of a phage-alkaline phosphatase fusion preparation, 50 fold concentrated with respect to the original culture supernatant. The rate of change of absorbance was monitored at 410nm using a Philips 8730 spectrophotometer and the initial reaction rate calculated using a molar absorbance of 14200 l/mol/cm. For the fdpho166 enzyme but not fdphoarg166 a lag phase was seen following this addition, the reaction rate accelerating until a steady state was obtained after approximately 60 to 90 secs. This steady state rate was used for determination of kinetic parameters. No deviation from Michaelis-Menten Kinetics was apparent for either phage enzyme. Values of  $K_m$  and  $k_{cat}$  were derived from plots of  $s/v$  against  $s$  and are shown in Table 6.

Because of the difficulty in establishing the relationship between the number of phage particles and the number of active enzyme dimers formed on the phage coat values are expressed not as absolute values, but as relative values between the two enzyme forms. Western blots (carried out as in example 31 using antiG3p antiserum) of the phage enzyme preparations used in this experiment showed approximately equal intensities for the full length fusion band with the Arg166 and Ala166 enzymes when detected using antibody directed against gene3. In these preparations the intact fusion represents approximately 30% of the detected material. The two preparations were therefore assumed to be expressing approximately the same concentrations of intact fusions.

Table 6 summarises the kinetic data from this experiment and compares it with data from Chaidaroglou, A. et al (Biochemistry 27, 8338-8343 (1988)) obtained with soluble preparations of the wild type and mutant enzyme forms. The same substrate and assay conditions were used in both experiments. Soluble alkaline phosphatase was also tested in parallel in our experiments ( $K_m=8.5\mu M$ ;  $k_{cat}=3480$  mol substrate converted mol enzyme<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>).

The effect of mutating arginine at position 166 to alanine is qualitatively similar for the phage enzyme as for the soluble enzyme.  $K_m$  is increased about 15 fold and the relative  $k_{cat}$  is decreased to 36% of that for wild type. This increased  $K_m$  would reflect a reduction in substrate affinity in the phage enzyme on mutation of Arg166, as was proposed for the soluble enzyme (Chaidaroglou et al, 1988 supra), assuming the same kinetic mechanism applies. There are, however, some quantitative differences in the behaviour of  $K_m$  of the phage enzyme. The  $K_m$  of 73 $\mu M$  observed for fdphoarg166 compares with a  $K_m$  of 12.7 $\mu M$  for the free enzyme; the  $K_m$



for fdphoAla166 is 1070µM whereas the free mutant enzyme has a  $K_m$  of 1620µM. One can speculate that the higher  $K_m$  for fdphoArg 166 and the lower  $K_m$  for fdphoAla166, compared to the soluble enzymes result from the 'anchored' alkaline phosphatase fusion molecules interacting to form dimers in a different manner to the enzyme in free solution.

The relative values of  $K_{cat}$  for the Arg166 and Ala166 forms are however very similar for both the phage enzymes and the soluble enzymes, a reduction occurring on mutation to 35 to 40% of the value for the native enzyme. The rate limiting step, determining  $K_{cat}$ , for soluble phoArg166 is thought to be dissociation of non-covalently bound phosphate from the enzyme (Hull M.E. et al. Biochemistry 15, 1547-1551 1976). Chaidaroglou et al. (1988) supra suggest that, for the soluble enzyme, mutation of Arg166 to alanine alters additional steps, one of which may be hydrolysis of the phosphoenzyme intermediate. The similarity in the reduction in  $K_{cat}$  on mutation of Arg166 to alanine for the phage enzymes suggests that the same steps may be altered in a quantitatively similar manner in the mutant phage enzyme as in the mutant soluble enzyme.

Thus, enzymes displayed on phage show qualitatively similar characteristics to soluble enzymes.

#### Example 31

##### Demonstration using Ultrafiltration that Cloned Alkaline Phosphatase Behaves as Part of the Virus Particle

The construct fdphoAla166 (derived in example 11) was converted back to the wild type residue (arginine) at position 166 by in vitro mutagenesis (Amersham International) using the primer APARG166:5' TAGCATTCGGCGAGGTCA 3'. This construct with the wild type insert was called fdphoArg166.

E. coli TG1 or KS272 cells with a deletion in the endogenous phoA gene, Strauch and Beckwith, 1988 Supra) containing either fd-phoAla166, fdphoArg166 or fd-CAT2 were grown for 16 hours at 37°C in 2xTY with 15µg/ml tetracycline. Concentrated phage were prepared as follows. Phage-enzyme cultures are clarified by centrifugation (15 min at 10,000 rpm, 8 x 50 ml rotor, sorval RC-5B centrifuge). Phage are precipitated by adding 1/5 volume 20% polyethylene glycol, 2.5 M NaCl, leaving for 1 hr at 4°C, and centrifuging (as above). Phage pellets are resuspended in 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0 to 1/100th of the original volume, and residual bacteria and aggregated phage removed by centrifugation for 10 to 15 minutes in a bench microcentrifuge at 13000 rpm at 4°C.

SDS/Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and western blotting were basically as described previously (example

2). Denatured samples consisting of 16µl of a 50 fold concentrate of phage were separated using a 10% SDS/polyacrylamide gel and detected with polyclonal antiserum raised against either E.coli alkaline phosphatase (Northumbria Biologicals, South Nelson Industrial Estate, Cramlington, Northumberland, NE23 9HL) or against the minor coat protein encoded by gene 3 (from Prof. I. Rasched, Universität Konstanz, see Stangale et al, 1990) at 1 in 1000 dilution. This was followed by incubation with peroxidase-conjugated goat-anti-rabbit immunoglobulin (Sigma 1 in 5000) and detection with the ECL Western blotting system (Amersham International).

The presence of fusion proteins was confirmed by western blotting of proteins from phage particles derived from fd-phoAla166 (phage-enzyme) or fd-CAT2 (vector phage). Detection with antiserum raised against the gene 3 protein, reveals a product of apparent relative molecular mass (Mr) of 63,000 in vector phage (figure 34e). Although this is different from the predicted molecular weight based on the amino acid sequence (42,000), the natural product of gene 3 has previously been reported to exhibit reduced mobility during electrophoresis (Stangale et al, 1990).

In the fd-phoAla166 sample the largest band has an apparent Mr of 115,000, (fig. 34). Taking into account the aberrant mobility of the gene 3 portion of the fusion, this is approximately the size expected from fusing with an alkaline phosphatase domain of 47 kD. This analysis also reveals that a proportion of the gene 3 reactive material in this phage-enzyme preparation is present at the size of the native gene 3 product, suggesting that degradation is occurring. In the preparation shown in figure 34, approximately 5-10% of the gene 3 fusions are intact. In more recent preparations and in all the preparations used in this example and example 32, approximately 30-60% of fusions are full length.

The protein of Mr 115,000 is the major protein observed in Western blots of phage-enzymes derived from TG1 cells when probed with antiserum raised against E.coli alkaline phosphatase (anti-BAP), confirming the assignment of this band to intact fusion. Further, when phage enzyme is prepared using KS272 cells, which have a deletion in the endogenous phoA gene (Strauch & Beckwith, 1988, supra.) it is also the major band. There are additional bands at Mr 95000 and 60000 reactive with anti-BAP antiserum which may indicate degradation of the fusion product.

The anti-BAP antiserum also reacts with material running with the dye front and with a molecule of Mr 45,000 but evidence suggests that this material is not alkaline phosphatase. This pattern is detected in pho



precipitated vector phage samples (figure 34c) and is not therefore contributed by protein expressed from the cloned phoA gene. These bands are detected in culture supernatants of cells carrying fd-CAT2 but is not detected in the supernatant of uninfected cells (not shown) and so either represents cross-reactivity with phage encoded material or with a P80 precipitable cellular component leaked from infected cells (Boeke et al, Mol. Gen. Genet. 186, 185-192 1982). Although the fragment of Mr. 45,000 is close to the size of free alkaline phosphatase (47,000), it is present in phage preparations from K3272 cells which have a deletion in the phoA locus. Furthermore its mobility is different from purified alkaline phosphatase and they can be distinguished by electrophoresis (figure 34d).

Ultrafiltration was used to confirm that the fusion protein behaved as though it were part of a larger phage particle. Phage samples (100 $\mu$ l of a 50 fold concentrate) were passed through ultrafiltration filters with a nominal molecular weight limit of 300,000 daltons (Ultrafree-MC filters, Millipore) by centrifugation for 5 to 15 minutes at 13,000 r.p.m. in an MSE microcentaur microfuge. Retained material was recovered by resuspending in 100 $\mu$ l of 10mM Tris, pH 8.0.

Phage-enzyme or free alkaline phosphatase (83ng) mixed with vector phage were passed through filters with a nominal molecular weight limit of 300,000 daltons (Ultrafree-MC filters, Millipore). Figure 35 A again shows that the band of Mr. 115,000 is the major product reactive with anti-BAP antiserum. This and the other minor products reactive with anti-BAP are present in material retained by the ultrafiltration membrane. Analysis of retained and flow through fractions of phage preparations derived from K3272 demonstrates that different molecular species are being separated by the ultrafiltration membranes. Figure 35b shows the protein of Mr 115,000 is retained by the filter whereas the putative degradation products of Mr 95,000 and 60,000 found in phage preparations derived from K3272 cells, are not retained.

In mixture of alkaline phosphatase and vector phage Figure 35c-f, free alkaline phosphatase (dimer size of 94,000 daltons) is detected in the flow through as a monomer band with Mr 47,000 on denaturing polyacrylamide gels (figure 35g), while the cross reactive molecule found in vector phage preparations (Mr 45,000) is in retained on the filter (figure 35h). This suggests that the cross reactive molecule is part of the phage particle and underlines the fact that the ultrafiltration membranes are effecting a separation. Thus the expected fusion band in this phage-enzyme is present in material

retained on ultrafiltration membranes demonstrating that it is part of a larger structure as would be expected for viral bound enzymes.

Catalytic activity has been demonstrated on phage particles expressing alkaline phosphatase. Table 7 shows that the wild type alkaline phosphatase gene expressed on phage (fd-phoAig166) has a specific activity (moles of substrate converted per mole of viral particles) of 3.700/min. This is close to the turnover value of 4540/min found for purified alkaline phosphatase by Malamy and Horecker, Biochemistry 3, 1893-1897 1964).

Chaladaroglou et al, 1988 supra have shown that substituting alanine for arginine at the active site (residue 166) leads to a reduction in the rate of catalysis. Preparations of phage displaying alkaline phosphatase with this mutation derived from T61 and K3272 show reduced specific activities of 380 and 1400 mol substrate converted/mol phage/min respectively. Enzyme activity was measured in the retained and flow-through fractions prepared by ultrafiltration, shown in figure 35. The bulk of activity from phage-enzyme was retained on the filters whereas the majority of activity from free enzyme passes through. Therefore, the enzyme activity in these fusions behaved as would be expected for virally associated enzyme (not shown). Little or no catalytic activity is measured in preparations of vector phage from either T61 or K3272 cells (Table 7), indication that the catalytic activities above are due to phage enzyme and not contamination with bacterial phosphatase. Addition of phage particles to soluble enzyme does not have a significant effect on activity (Table 7).

Therefore, both the catalytic and immunochemical activity of alkaline phosphatase have been demonstrated to be due to enzyme which is part of the phage particle.

#### Example 32

Affinity chromatography of phage alkaline phosphatase Affinity chromatography, using the specific binding properties of enzymes has proved to be a very powerful method for their purification. The purification of phage-enzymes by this approach would enable the genetic material encoding the enzyme to be isolated with the enzyme itself. Thus, mutagenesis of cloned enzymes expressed on the surface of filamentous bacteriophage will lead to a whole population of enzyme variants, from which variants with desired binding properties could be isolated.

Soluble alkaline phosphatase (from calf intestine) has been purified by binding to immobilised arsenate (a competitive inhibitor), and eluting with inorganic phosphate, which is a product (and competitive inhibitor) of the enzyme reaction (Branna, O. et al, Biochem. J. 151 291-296, 1975). The applicants have determined that

soluble alkaline phosphatase from *E. coli* is also retained by this matrix (not shown). In this example it is demonstrated that phage displaying *E. coli* alkaline phosphatase binds to arsenate-Sepharose and can be specifically eluted.

Arsenate-Sepharose was prepared by coupling 4-(p-aminophenylazo) phenyl arsonic acid to tyraminyl-Sepharose according to the method of Breana et al. (1975; supra). Affinity chromatography of phage enzyme fdphoArg166 (example 31) was carried out in a disposable chromatography column with a 0.5 ml column volume. Columns were prewashed with 100 volumes of column buffer (100mM Tris pH 8.4, 1mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.1 mM ZnCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.1% Tween 20, Breana et al. 1975, supra.) 1ml of a 40 fold concentrate of phage-enzyme (in column buffer; prepared as in example 31) was loaded and washed through with 100 volumes of column buffer. Bound phage-enzyme was eluted with 5mls of column buffer containing 20mM NaHPO<sub>4</sub>. The eluate and wash fractions were quantitated by dot blotting onto nitrocellulose and comparing with known amounts of phage-enzyme. The blots were detected using sheep anti-M13 antiserum (gift from M. Hobart), anti-sheep peroxidase (Sigma) and enhanced chemiluminescent substrate (Amersham). A range of exposures were taken.

Table 8 shows the results of affinity chromatography of phage displaying alkaline phosphatase on arsenate-Sepharose. In separate experiments phage particles expressing either mutant (fdphoArg 166; example 11) and or wild type (fdphoArg 166) forms are retained on arsenate-Sepharose and eluted with inorganic phosphate. Approximately 0.5 to 3% of added phage enzyme particles loaded ('input phage') were specifically eluted with phosphate ('output phage') compared to only 0.05% of vector particles. Arsenate is a competitive inhibitor with K<sub>i</sub> of 20pM with respect to 4- nitrophenyl phosphate. Phage particles antibodies have previously been isolated on the basis of interactions with similar affinities (example 23). This association is in within the range of a large number of enzyme-ligand interactions suggesting wide applicability for this approach.

Table 8 also shows that the infectivity of phage particles expressing enzyme is reduced with compared with vector phage particles. This makes titration of infectious particles an inappropriate means of quantitating the number of phage enzyme particles. For this reason the number of phage enzyme particles, for blotting and phage were detected with anti-M13 antiserum as above.

Whereas, overall recovery of catalytic activity may be an important consideration in enzyme purification, this is not critical with phage-enzymes. Even if only low levels of phage-enzyme bind to and are specifically

eluted from affinity columns, this will generate clones which can subsequently be grown up in bulk as phage-enzymes or can be transferred to expression vectors yielding soluble products.

Example 33  
PCR Assembly of DNA encoding Fab Fragments of an Antibody directed Against Oxazolone

Example 25 showed that genes encoding Fab fragments could be subcloned into vectors fdCAT2 and pHEM1 and the protein domains displayed on the surface of phage with retention of binding function. This example shows that the VHCH and VKCK domains can be amplified separately and then joined by a linker allowing the expression of the light chain as a geneIII protein fusion and the VHCH fragment as a soluble molecule. A functional Fab fragment is then displayed on phage by association of these domains. The assembly process, described in this example, is required for display of a library of Fab fragments derived from the immune repertoire if both heavy and light chain domains are to be encoded within a single vector.

The VHCH1 and VKCK domains of a construct (example 25; construct II in pUC19) derived from antibody NQ10 12.5 directed against 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone were amplified using PCR. For cloning into the vector fdCAT2 the oligonucleotides VHBACKAPA (example 25) and HuGG1-4 CH1FOR (example 40) were used to amplify the VHCH1 domains. For cloning into pHEM1 VHBACKSFH5 (example 25) replaced VHBACKAPA for this amplification. For cloning into both vectors the VKCK domains were amplified using VKZBACK (example 25) and CKNOTFOR (example 40). A linker oligonucleotide fragment containing the bacteriophage fd gene 8 terminator and the fd gene 3 promoter was prepared by amplifying the region containing them from the vector fdCAT2 by PCR using the oligonucleotides.

VK-TERM-FOR  
5' TGG AGA CTG GGT GAG CTC AAT GTC GGA GTG AGA ATA GAA AGG 3' (overlapping with VKZBACK [example 14])

and  
CH1-TERM-BACK

5' AAG CCC AGC AAC ACC AAG GTG GAC AAG AAA GTT GAG CCC AAA TCT AGC TGA TAA ACC GAT ACA ATT AAA GGC 3' (overlapping with HuGG1-4 CH1-FOR)

Assembly of the Fab fragment from the amplified VHCH1 and VKCK domains and the linker prepared as above was as described in example 14E except that the primers VHBACKAPA (when cloning into fdCAT2) or VHBACKSFH5 (when cloning into pHEM1) and CKNOTFOR were used for the final reamplification, thereby introducing restriction sites for cloning into fdCAT2 (ApaI-NotI) or pHEM1 (SfiI-NotI) the assembled Fab fragment is shown in figure 34. No assembled product was seen in the absence of

97

linker. An assembled scFv prepared according to example 14 is shown for comparison.

Phage antibodies were prepared as in example 25 and ELISA was performed with oxazolone as antigen according to example 6. Results were as expected for Fab fragments cloned in both fdCA72 and pHEM1 samples, phage particles bound to oxazolone as detected by a positive ELISA signal.

#### Example 34

##### Construction of a Gene III Deficient Helper Phage

To fully realise the potential of the phagemid cloning system, a helper phage lacking gene III is desirable. Rescue of gene III fusions with such a helper phage would result in all the progeny phagemids having a gene III fusion on their capsid, since there would be no competition with the wild type molecule.

Control over the number of fusion molecules contained on each phage will provide particularly useful.

For example, a gene III deficient helper phage can be used to rescue low affinity antibodies from a naive repertoire, in which high avidity will be necessary to isolate those phage bearing the correct antibody specificity. The unmutated helper phage can then be used when higher affinity versions are constructed, thereby reducing the avidity component, and permitting selection purely on the basis of affinity. This will prove a surprisingly successful strategy for isolation and affinity maturation of antibodies from naive libraries.

The strategy chosen to construct the helper phage was to partially delete gene III of M13K07 using exonuclease Bal 31. However, phage lacking gene III protein are non-infective so an E.coli strain expressing gene III was constructed. Wild type M13 gene III was PCR-amplified with primers gIIIFUPO and gIIIFUBA, exactly as described in example 24. The PCR product was digested with Eco RI and Hind III and inserted into Eco RI and Hind III-cut pUC19 (not a phagemid as it lacks the filamentous phage origin of SS DNA replication) under control of the lac promoter. The plasmid was transformed into E.coli TGI, and the resulting strain called TGI/pUC19gIII. This strain provides gIII protein in trans to the helper phage.

There is a single unique Bam HI site in M13K07, which is approximately in the centre of gIII. Double-stranded M13K07 DNA was prepared by alkaline lysis and caesium chloride centrifugation (Sambrook et al, et supra, 1989); twenty µg of DNA was cut with Bam HI, phenol extracted and ethanol precipitated then resuspended in 50µl of Bal 31 buffer (600mM NaCl, 20mM Tris-HCl pH 8.0, 12 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 12mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and 1mM EDTA) and digested for 4 minutes with 1 unit of Bal 31 (New England Biolabs). This treatment removed approximately

98

1Kb of DNA. EGTA was added to 20mM and the reaction phenol extracted and ethanol precipitated prior to purification of the truncated genome on an agarose gel. The DNA was repaired with Klenow enzyme and self-ligated with T4 DNA ligase (New England Biolabs).

Aliquots of the ligation reaction were transformed into competent TGI/pUC19gIII and plated on SOB medium containing ampicillin at 100µg/ml and kanamycin at 50µg/ml. Colonies were screened for the presence of a deletion by PCR with primers gIIIFUBA and KSJ12 (CGGAATGCGCAATAGACTGG).

KSJ 12 anneals to gene VI which is immediately downstream of gIII in the phage genome, so distinguishing gIII on the helper phage from that resident on the plasmid. Three clones gave truncated PCR products corresponding to deletions of ca. 200, 400 and 800bp. These clones were called M13K07.gIIIΔ Nos 1, 2 and 3 respectively. No clones were isolated from the earlier Bal 31 time points, suggesting that these are in some way lethal to the host cell. Several clones were isolated from later time points, but none of these gave a PCR product, indicating that the deletion reaction had gone too far.

M13K07.gIIIΔ Nos 1, 2 and 3 were cultured and the resulting helper phage tested for their ability to rescue an antibody gIII fusion (scFv D1.3) by ELISA, exactly as described in example 18. As shown in figure 37, only one clone, M13K07.gIIIΔ No3 was found to rescue the antibody well; in fact the signal using this helper was greater than that observed with the parent M13 K07. M13K07.gIIIΔ No3 rescued phagemids should have a much higher density of antibody fusions on their surfaces. That this was indeed the case was demonstrated when the phage used in this ELISA were analysed by Western blotting with anti gIII protein antiserum (fig. 38). This analysis enables estimation of the amount of gIII fusion protein versus free gIII protein present on the phage(solid) particles.

Only a minute fraction of the gIII protein on the M13K07-rescued material is present as an intact fusion (fig.38). The fusion protein band is induced by IPTG, so is indisputably that synthesised by the phagemid. As expected, even when the lac promoter driving gIII fusion protein synthesis is fully induced (100µM IPTG), wild type gIII protein, at a lower copy number and driven from a far weaker promoter, predominates. This is in contrast to the pattern generated by the same clone rescued with M13K07.gIIIΔNo3, and the pattern generated by fd CA72-scFv D1.3. In both of these latter cases, there is no competition with wild-type gIII and the fusion protein band is correspondingly stronger.

It is worthy of note that construction of M13K07.gIIIΔNo3 was immensely inefficient: one clone from 20µg

of starting DNA. Moreover, the yield of gIII helper phage from overnight cultures is extremely low ca.10<sup>6</sup> cfu/ml compared with ca. 10<sup>11</sup> cfu/ml for the parental phage. Despite this, M13K07 gIII No3 rescues the phagemid as well as the parental phage, as judged by the number of phagemid particles produced after overnight growth. This indicates that trans replication and packaging functions of the helper are intact and suggest that its own replication is defective. Hence it may be that inactivation of gIII is normally toxic to the host cell, and that M13K07 gIIIΔNo3 was isolated because of a compensating mutation affecting, for example, replication. Phage fd-tet is unusual in that it tolerates mutations in structural genes that are normally lethal to the host cell, since it has a replication defect that slows down accumulation of toxic phage products; M13K07 gIIIΔNo3 may also have such a defect.

M13K07g IIIΔNo 3 has been deposited at the National Collection of Type Cultures, 61 Colindale Avenue, London, NW9 6HT, UK (Accession No. NCTC 12478). On 28 June 1991, in accordance with the regulations of the Budapest Treaty. It contains a deletion of the M13 genome from bases 1979 to 2768 inclusive (see Van Wezenbeek, P.G.M.F. et al., Gene II p129-148, 1980 for the DNA sequence of the M13 genome).

#### Example 35

Selection of bacteriophage expressing scfv fragments directed against lysozyme from mixtures according to affinity using a panning procedure

For isolation of an antibody with a desired high affinity, it is necessary to be able to select an antibody with only a few fold higher affinity than the remainder of the population. This will be particularly important when an antibody with insufficient affinity has been isolated, for example, from a repertoire derived from an immunised animal, and random mutagenesis is used to prepare derivatives with potentially increased affinity. In this example, mixtures of phage expressing antibodies of different affinities directed against hen egg lysozyme were subjected to a panning procedure. It is demonstrated that phage antibodies give the ability to select for an antibody with a K<sub>d</sub> of 2nM against one with a K<sub>d</sub> of 13nM.

The oligonucleotides used in this example are shown in the list below:

#### OLIGONUCLEOTIDES

VHHD13APA : 5'- CAC AGT GCA CAG GTC CAA CTG CAG GAG AGC GGT  
 VHFD13 : 5'- CGG TGA CGA GGC TGC CTT GAC CCC  
 HD13BLIN : 5'- GGG CTC AGG GCA GGC TCG TCA CCG  
 HD13FLIN3 : 5'- TGG GCT CTG GGT CAT CTG GAT GTC CGA T  
 VKHBD13 : 5'- CAC ATC CAG ATG ACC CAG AGC CGA

VKFD13NQT : 5'- GAG TCA TTC TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT GAT TTC  
 CAC CTT GGT CTT  
 HMD13SED : 5'- GAG GAG ATT TTC CCT GT  
 HMD13SED : 5'- TTG GAG CTT TAC CTG GC  
 FDPGFOR : 5'- TAG CCC CTT TAT TAG CTT TTG CCA  
 FDPGRBAK : 5'- CGG ATG GGT GTT GTC ATT GTC GGC

Phage displaying scfv fragments directed against lysozyme were derived from cloned Fab fragments in plasmids.

Heavy and light chain variable regions were amplified by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from plasmids containing humanized VH-CH1 or VK-CK inserts suitable for production of Fab fragments (gift of J. Foote). The dissociation constant, K<sub>d</sub> for different combinations of the two plasmids combined as Fabs, are shown below:

Heavy Chain Plasmid	Light Chain Plasmid	K <sub>d</sub>
HuK-1	HuK-3	52 nM
HuK-2	HuK-4	180 nM
HuK-3	HuK-3	13 nM
HuK-4	HuK-4	(not determined)

#### Primary PCR

The primary PCR of the variable regions was performed by combining the following:

36.5 μl Water  
 5 μl PCR buffer (10x)  
 2 μl dNTP (5mM)  
 2.5 μl Back oligo (10 pmoles/μl) (VHHD13APA or VKHBD13)  
 2.5 μl Forward oligo (10 pmoles/μl) (VHFD13 or VKFD13NQT)

The reaction is decontaminated by UV irradiation to destroy foreign DNA for 5 minutes, and 1 μl of plasmid DNA added (0.1 μg/μl). The PCR mixture was covered with 2 drops of paraffin oil, and placed on the PCR block at 94°C for 5 minutes before the addition of 0.5 μl of Taq DNA polymerase under the paraffin. The cycling conditions used were 94°C 1 min, 40°C 1 min, 72°C 1.5 min 17 cycles.

The linker (Gly4-Sar)<sub>3</sub>, was amplified from the anti-phox (2-phanyloxazol-5-one) clone fd-CAT2-scFv NQ11, using the oligos HD13BLIN and HD13FLIN3, with 0.1 μg of plasmid DNA. The PCR cycling used was 94°C 1 min, 25°C 1.5 min, for 17 cycles.

Amplified DNA was purified by running the samples on a 2% low melting point agarose gel at 90 mA, excising the appropriate bands and extracting the DNA using the GeneClean II Kit (BIO 101 Inc.) for the VH and VK, or by using Spin-X filter units (Costar) for the linker. A final volume of 10 μl was used to resuspend the extracted DNA.

#### PCR Assembly

Assembly of the four single chain Fv Humanized D1.3

(scFv HuD1.3) constructs was by the process of 'assembly by overlap extension' example 14.

The following were combined:

- 5 5 µl PCR Buffer (10x)
- 2 µl dNTP (5 mM)
- 2.5 µl Back oligo (10 pmol/µl) (VHHD13A/P)
- 2.5 µl Forward oligo (10 pmol/µl) (VKFHD13NOT)

Once again, the reaction is decontaminated by UV treatment for 5 minutes before the addition of 1 µl of the primary PCR products; VH-1 or VH-2, VK-3 or VK-4, plus the linker DNA. The reaction was covered with 2 drops of paraffin, and heated at 94°C for 5 minutes before the addition of 0.5 µl of Taq Polymerase. The PCR cycling conditions used were 94°C 1 min, 60°C 1.5 min, 72°C 2.5 min for 20 cycles.

The aqueous layer under the paraffin was extracted once with phenol, once with phenol:chloroform, once with ether, ethanol precipitated, and resuspended in 36 µl of water. To this was added, 5 µl of 10x Buffer for NotI, 5 µl 1 mg/ml BSA, and 4 µl (40 U) of NotI (New England Biolabs). The restriction was incubated at 37°C overnight.

The DNA was ethanol precipitated and resuspended in 36 µl of water, and 5 µl 10x NEB Buffer 4, 5 µl 1 mg/ml BSA, and 2 µl (40 U) of ApuLI (New England Biolabs). This was incubated at 37°C for 5 hours; a further 2 µl of ApuLI was added and the reaction incubated at 37°C overnight.

The cut DNA was extracted by gel purification on a 1.3% low melting point agarose gel followed by treatment with GeneClean, to yield the insert DNA for cloning.

Vector fd CAT2 (prepared and digested with ApuLI and NotI as in example 20) and the scFv DNA were ligated as in example 20.

#### Analysis Of Clones

Colonies from the ligations were first screened for inserts by PCR screening. The PCR mixture was prepared in bulk by combining 14.8 µl 1x PCR Buffer, 1 µl dNTP (5 mM), 1 µl Back oligo (FDCRBAK), 1 µl Forward oligo (FDCRFOR), and 0.2 µl Taq polymerase per colony screened. 20 µl of this PCR mixture was aliquoted into a 96 well Techni plate. The top of a colony was touched with a toothpick and twirled quickly into the PCR mixture and the colony resusced by placing the toothpick in a Cellwell plate (Nunc) containing 250 µl of 2x TY medium. The PCR mixture is covered with 1 drop of paraffin and the plate placed on the block at 94°C for 10 minutes before cycling at 94°C 1 minute, 60°C 1 minute, 72°C 2.5 minutes.

The clones thus derived were named as below. The affinity of scFv fragments derived the Fab fragments was

not determined but previous results suggest that these are closely related although not necessarily identical (R.B. Bird & B.W. Walker *TECH 9* 132-137, 1991).

Construct	Composition	Affinity of Fab (Kd)
5		
TPB1	VH-HuH2-(Gly <sub>4</sub> -Ser) <sub>3</sub> -VK-HuK3	13 nM
TPB2	VH-HuH1-(Gly <sub>4</sub> -Ser) <sub>3</sub> -VK-HuK4	180 nM
10		
TPB3	VH-HuH2-(Gly <sub>4</sub> -Ser) <sub>3</sub> -VK-HuK4	(Unknown)
TPB4	VH-HuH1-(Gly <sub>4</sub> -Ser) <sub>3</sub> -VK-HuK3	52 nM

Preparation of phage and ELISA was as described in example 6. The clones generated in fd CAT2 were shown to bind lysosyme as expected.

#### Affinity selection

##### Selection of Highest Affinity Binding Phage

Mixing experiments were performed in which fd-CAT2 scFvD1.3 phage (example 19) were mixed with either fd-CAT2 TPB1, fd-CAT2 TPB2, or fd-CAT2 TPB4, and used in one round of panning.

The general method used for affinity selection by panning is that detailed below. Any deviation from this protocol is described at the relevant point. Panning plates were placed on a rocking platform between manipulations.

Falcon 35 mm Tissue Culture dishes were coated overnight with 1 ml of lysosyme (various concentrations) dissolved in 50 mM Sodium Hydrogen Carbonate, pH 9.6, and blocked with 2 ml 2% MPBS at room temperature for 2 hours. Phage were prepared in 1 ml 2% MPBS and rocked at room temperature for 2 hours. Plates were washed for 5 minutes with 2 ml of the following solutions; 5 times with PBS; PBS-Tween, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5; 500 mM Sodium Chloride, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.3; 500 mM Sodium Chloride, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 9.5; 500 mM Sodium Chloride, 50 mM Sodium Hydrogen Carbonate, pH 9.6; 500 mM Sodium Chloride. Phage were then eluted by adding 1 ml 100 mM Tris-HCl and rocking for 5 minutes before removing the eluate which was neutralised with 100 µl 1.0 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.4.

Plates were coated overnight with lysosyme at the concentration listed below.

Colonies from the single round of panning were probed with either MURD8EQ (for fdCAT2 scFvD1.3) or HUMD135EQ (for fdCAT2 TPB constructs).

Circles of nitrocellulose (Schleicher & Schuell, BA 85, 0.45 µm) were labelled in pencil and lowered gently onto the colonies derived from the panning experiments and left for one minute. The filters were then pulled off quickly from one edge and placed colony side up on a piece of 3MM paper (Whatman) soaked in Denaturing

solution (500 mM Sodium Hydroxide; 1.5 M Sodium Chloride) for 5 minutes. They were then transferred to 3M soaked in Neutralizing Solution (3.0 M Sodium Chloride; 500 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5) for 1 minute, and then to 3M soaked in 5x SSC; 250 mM Ammonium Acetate for 1 minute. The filters were then air dried before baking in an 80°C vacuum oven for 30 minutes.

The oligonucleotide probe was prepared by combining the following:

- 2  $\mu$ l oligonucleotide (1 pmol/ $\mu$ l)
- 2  $\mu$ l  $\gamma$ -32P ATP (3000 Ci/mmol) (Amersham International plc)
- 2  $\mu$ l 10 x Kinase buffer (0.5 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.5; 100 mM Magnesium Chloride; 10 mM DTT)
- 12  $\mu$ l Water
- 2  $\mu$ l Polynucleotide Kinase (20 Units)

This was incubated at 37°C for 1 hour.

Hybridization was performed in the Technic HB-1 Hybridiser. The baked filters were pre-hybridized at 37°C in 40 ml of Hybridization Buffer (10 ml 100 mM Sodium pyrophosphate; 180 ml 5.0 M Sodium chloride; 20 ml 50x Denhardt's Solution; 90 ml 1.0 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.5; 24 ml 250 mM EDTA; 50 ml 10% NP40; made to 1 litre with water; 60.3 mg rATP; 200 mg yeast RNA (Sigma)), for 15 minutes before the addition of the 20  $\mu$ l of the kinased oligo. The filters were incubated at 37°C for at least one hour, and then washed 3 times with 50 ml of 6x SSC at 37°C for 10 minutes (low stringency wash). Filters were air dried, covered with Saran wrap and exposed overnight with Kodak X-AR film.

Selection of fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 from fd-CAT2 TPB4

Figure 39 summarizes the results from panning experiments using a mixture of the high affinity fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 phage (Kd-2 nM) and the fd-CAT2 TPB4 construct (Kd-52 nM).

At a coating concentration of 3000  $\mu$ g/ml lysozyme, little or no enrichment could be obtained. It was however, possible to get enrichment for the scFv D1.3 phage when a lower concentration of lysozyme was used for coating the plates. The best enrichment value obtained was from 1.5% fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 in the starting mixture, to 33% fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 in the eluted fraction, on a plate coated overnight with 30  $\mu$ g/ml lysozyme.

Selection of fd-CAT2 scFv D1.3 from fd-CAT2 TPB1

Enrichment for the high affinity scFv D1.3 phage over the fd-CAT2 TPB1 phage (Kd-13) nM, could only be shown from experiments where the plates had been coated overnight with low concentrations of lysozyme, as shown in Figure 40.

In summary, single chain Fv versions of a series of humanized D1.3 antibodies have been constructed in phage fd-CAT2. By affinity selection of fd-CAT2 phage

mixtures, by panning in small petri dishes, it was shown that the high affinity scFv D1.3 phage, could be preferentially selected for against a background of lower affinity scFv D1.3 phage.

Example 36

Expression of Catalytically Active Staphylococcal Nuclease on the Surface of Bacteriophage fd

Examples 11 and 12 showed that alkaline phosphatase from *E. coli* can be expressed as a catalytically active enzyme on the surface of bacteriophage fd. Here we show that Staphylococcal nuclease can also be expressed in a catalytically active form suggesting that this methodology may be general.

The gene for the enzyme Staphylococcal nuclease (SNase) was amplified from M13 mp18 - SNase (Neuberger, M.S. et al Nature 312 604-608, 1984) by PCR using primers with internal *Apel*I (5'-

GGATTGCTGCACAGAGTGCACATTCACATAAAATAC-3') and NotI

(5'-GGATCGCGCCGCTTGCATCGATCGGTTGCTCG-3') restriction sites, cloned into phage vector fd-CAT2 after digestion with *Apel*I-NotI restriction enzymes and the nucleotide sequence of the SNase gene and junctions with gene III checked by DNA sequencing. The fd-tat-SNase phage was prepared from the supernatant of infected *E. coli* T01 cultures by three rounds of PEG precipitation, and the fusion protein demonstrated by SDS-gel electrophoresis and Western blotting using rabbit anti-gp3 antiserum (Prof. J. Rasched, Konstanz) and peroxidase-labelled goat anti-rabbit antibodies (Sigma) (Fig.41) as described in example 27. As well as the fusion protein band (calculated Mr 59749, but runs at a higher position due to the aberrant gp3 behaviour), a smaller (proteolytic ?) product is seen.

This fusion protein was shown to be catalytically active by incubation of the fd-tat-SNase phage ( $4 \times 10^9$  tetracycline resistant colonies [TU]) with single stranded DNA (1  $\mu$ g) for 1 hr at 37°C in the presence of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and analysis of the digest by agarose gel electrophoresis (Figure 42). Nuclease activity was not detected with the parent fd-CAT2 ( $2 \times 10^{10}$  TU) phage alone or after three rounds of PEG precipitation of mixtures of fd-CAT2 ( $2 \times 10^{10}$  TU) with SNase (0.7  $\mu$ g). Thus the nuclease activity results from the display of the enzyme on the surface of the phage and not from co-precipitated or soluble SNase set free by degradation of the fusion protein. The nuclease activity of fd-tat-SNase (Figure 42) lies in the same order of magnitude, ( $2 \times 10^8$  TU and assuming three copies of SNase per TU) as an equimolar amount of SNase (0.03 ng or  $10^8$  particles), and like the authentic SNase was dependent on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , since incubation with 40 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$  and 25 mM EGTA blocked activity (not shown).

105

**Example 37: Display of the Two Amino-terminal Domains of Human CD4 on the Surface of fd Phage**

The protein CD4, a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily, is a cell surface receptor involved in HIV class II restricted immune recognition. It is also recognised by the protein gp120 derived from the human immunodeficiency virus (AIDS virus). The first two domains (named V1 and V2, residues 1-178) of the surface antigen CD4 were amplified from pUC13-T4 (gift from T. Simon) containing the human cDNA of CD4, by PCR using primers with internal ApalI (5'-GGA ATT CTT GCA CAG AAG AAA GTG GTG CTT GGC AAA AAA GGG G-3') and NotI (5'-GGG ATC CCG GGC CAC TAG CAC CAC GAT GTC TAT TTT GAA CTC-3') restriction sites. After digestion with these two enzymes, the PCR-product was cloned into fdCAT2, and the complete nucleotide sequence of the CD4-V1V2 DNA and junctions with gene III checked by dideoxy sequencing using oligonucleotides fd-seq1 (5'-GAA TTT TCT GTA TGA GGG), CD4-seq1 (5'-GAA GTT TCC TTG GTC CC-3') and CD4-seq2 (5'-ACT ACC AGG GGG GCT CT-3'). In the same way, a fd-CAT-V1 version was made, linking residues 1-107 to the N-terminus of gene III, using previously mentioned primers and oligonucleotide 5'-GGG ATC CCG GGC GGC GTC GTC AGA CTT GGC AGT CAA TCC GAA CAC-3' for amplification, PCR conditions and cloning were essentially as described in example 15 except that digestion was with ApalI and NotI (used according to the manufacturers instructions).

Both fd-CAT-V1 and fd-CAT-V1V2 phages were prepared from the supernatant of infected E.coli TGI cultures by three rounds of PBS precipitation, thereby concentrating the sample 100-fold for ELISA analysis. The fusion protein was detected in a Western blot (results not shown) with a rabbit anti-gene III antiserum, and revealed bands of the expected size.

Binding of the CD4 moiety to soluble gp120 (recombinant HIV-IIIB gp120 from CHO cells, ADP604, obtained from the AIDS Directed Programme, National Institute for Biological Standards and Controls, South Mimms, Potters Bar, UK) was analysed in an ELISA, using 5 µg/ml gp120 for coating (overnight, in PBS). Anti-M13 antiserum was used to detect bound phage; all other conditions were as in Example 9. Figure 43 shows the ELISA signals of wild-type phage (fd-tat) and both CD4-phages. Both CD4-phages can bind gp120, but fd-CAT-V1V2 binds much stronger to gp120 than fd-CAT-V1. The binding competitors, soluble CD4 (recombinant soluble CD4 from Becton Dickinson, ADP 608; from the AIDS Directed Programme) (25 µg/ml) or soluble gp120 (20 µg/ml), added together with the 50 µl phage stock sample during the ELISA, decreased the signal to background level. These results indicate that phage binding to gp120 is mediated by the CD4 molecule displayed at its surface, and that binding

106

is stronger when the two amino-terminal domains of CD4 are presented. Thus, CD4 is a cell surface receptor molecule which is active when displayed on bacteriophage fd. Like the PDGF-BB receptor, the functional display of which is described in examples 15 and 16, CD4 is a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily and this result suggests that this class of molecule may be generally suitable for display on the surface of phage.

**Example 38: Generation and Selection of Mutants of an Anti-4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenylacetic acid (NP) Antibody Expressed on Phage using Mutator Strains**

It will sometimes be desirable to increase the diversity of a pool of genes cloned in phage, for example a pool of antibody genes, or to produce a large number of variants of a single cloned gene. There are many suitable in vitro mutagenesis methods. However, an attractive method, particularly for making a more diverse population of a library of antibody genes, is to use mutator strains. This has the advantage of generating very large numbers of mutants, essentially limited only by the number of phage that can be handled. The phage display system allows full advantage to be taken of this number to isolate improved or altered clones.

Nucleotide sequences encoding an antibody scFv fragment directed against 4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenylacetic acid (NP), scFvB18, derived as in example 14 from a monoclonal antibody against NP were cloned into fdCAT2 using ApalI and NotI restriction sites as in example 11 to create fdCAT2scFvB18 or into fdDOGkan (fdCAT2 with its tetracycline resistance gene removed and replaced by a kanamycin resistance gene) using PstI and NotI restriction sites to create fdDOGkanscFvB18 or into the phagemid vector pHEM1 using the restriction sites SfiI and NotI as a fusion protein with gene III to create pHEM1scFvB18.

The following mutator strains (R. M. Schaeper & R.L. Dunn J. Mol. Biol. 262 1627-1670, 1987; R. M. Schaeper Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 85 8126-8130 1988) were used:

NR9232: ara, thi, mutD5-zaf13::Tn10, prolec, P'prolec  
NR9670: ara, thi, azi, mutT1, leu::Tn10, prolec  
NR9292: ara, thi, mutH101, prolec, P'prolec  
NR9084: ara, thi, mutT1, azi, prolec, P'prolac::z'ΔM15

M15  
NR9046: ara, thi, supE, rif, nalA, metB, argR(am), prolec, P'prolac

were kind gifts of Dr. R. M. Schaeper (Department of Health & Human Services, NIH, PO Box 12233, Research Triangle Park, N.C. 27709)  
NR9046mutD5: NR9046 mutD5::Tn10  
NR9046mutT1: NR9046 mutT1::Tn10



were constructed by  $\text{P1}$  transduction according to standard procedures. Mutator strains were transfected with fdcAT2scfVb18 of fdcOGKanscfVb18 and transfectants selected for antibiotic resistance. Transfectants were grown for 24h at 37°C before mutant phage was harvested by PEG precipitation. The mutant phage were selected on a 1ml NIP (4-hydroxy-3-iodo-5-nitrophenylacetic acid)-BSA-Sepharose affinity column (prepared according to the manufacturers instructions) prewashed with 200ml of PBS and blocked by 20ml MPBS. Phage were loaded on the column in 10ml MPBS and unbound material reapplied to ensure complete binding. The column was subsequently washed with 10ml of MPBS and 500ml of PBS. Phage bound to the affinity matrix was eluted with 5 column volumes of 0.33 M NIP-Cap (example 48).

Phage eluate was incubated for 30min to 1h with log phase ( $2 \times 10^8$  cells/ml) *E. coli* mutator strains without antibiotic selection. The infected cells were then diluted 1:100 in 2xTY and grown for 24h with antibiotic selection (10µg/ml tetracycline or 30µg/ml kanamycin for fdcAT2scfVb18 or fdcOGKanscfVb18 respectively). Phage from this culture was used for another round of affinity selection and mutation.

Binding of phage antibodies was assayed by ELISA as in example 9 except that ELISA plates were coated with NIP-BSA (4-hydroxy-3-iodo-5-nitrophenylacetyl-BSA; 0.4 mg/ml). Culture supernatants were prepared following growth in Cellwells as described in example 21 and 20µl of culture supernatant was added to each well diluted to 200µl with MPBS.

Phage samples giving signals in ELISA of more than twice the background were tested ELISA as above for non-specific binding against lysosyme, BSA or O<sub>6</sub>-BSA (example 9). Specificity for NIP was further confirmed by an ELISA in which serial dilutions of NIP-CAP were added together with phage antibodies. Addition of increasing concentrations of NIP-CAP reduced the ELISA signal to the background level.

Phage giving positive signals in ELISA were sequenced and 2 different mutants were subcloned into PHEN1 phage and transformed into HB2151 for soluble expression and TGI for phage display (example 27).

For expression of soluble scfv fragments, transformants in *E. coli* HB2151 were grown at 37°C in 1 litre 2xTY, 0.2% glucose, 0.1mg/ml ampicillin to an OD<sub>600</sub> of 1 and expression of soluble scfv fragments induced by adding IPTG to 1mM. Cultures were shaken at 30°C for 16h.

Soluble scfVb18 was concentrated from crude bacterial supernatant in a FLOWGEN ultrafiltration unit to a volume of 20ml.

The concentrate was passed two times over a 2ml

column of NIP-BSA-Sepharose prewashed with 200ml of PBS. The column was washed with 500ml of PBS and 200ml of 0.1M Tris pH7.5, 0.5M NaCl and phage antibodies eluted with 50mM Citrate buffer pH2.3. The eluate was immediately neutralised with 1M Tris pH8. The eluate was dialysed against two changes of 1 litre PBS, 0.2M EDTA, precipitated protein was removed by centrifugation at 10000g and protein yield was determined by measuring the absorbance at 280nm of the supernatant.

After 4 rounds of mutation and selection, isolated clones were screened and in one or two rare examples strongly positive ELISA signals were obtained from phage antibodies derived from the mutation of each of fdcAT2scfVb18 and fdcOGKanscfVb18 in the ELISA. The ELISA conditions were such that the parent phage fdcAT2scfVb18 only generated weak signals. These phage antibodies giving strongly positive ELISA signals were enriched in further rounds by a factor of roughly 2.5 per round. Forty phage antibodies giving strongly positive signals were sequenced and they each displayed single mutations in six different positions in the scfVb18 nucleotide sequences, five of which reside in the light chain. More than 70% of the mutations occurred at positions 724 and 725 changing the first glycine in the 3 segment of the light chain (framework 4) to serine (in 21 cases) or aspartate (in 3 cases). The mutations found are shown in Table 9. The sequence of scfVb18 is shown in Figure 46.

The nucleotide sequences encoding the scfv fragments of a framework mutant with the above glycine to serine mutation, as well as a mutant where Tyr in the CDR3 of the light chain had been mutated to aspartate, were amplified by PCR from the phage antibody clones and subcloned into PHEN1 phage (essentially as in example 25). This avoids possible problems with gene III mutations caused by the mutator strains. The same pattern of ELISA signals was seen when the mutants were displayed on phage following rescue of the phageid with helper phage (as described in example 25) as when the mutants were assayed when expressed from the phage genomes as above.

The scfv fragments from scfVb18 and the scfv fragments containing the glycine to serine and tyrosine to aspartate mutations respectively were expressed in solution (following transfection into *E. coli* HB2151 as in example 27) at 30°C. They showed no differences in the ELISA signals between wild-type B18 and the framework mutant. The signal obtained from the phage antibody with the Tyr mutated to aspartate in CDR3 of scfVb18 was about 10x stronger. Expression yields were found to be comparable as judged by Western blotting using an antiserum raised against g3p (as described above).



Affinity measurements were performed using fluorescence quenching as described in example 23. Affinity measurement of affinity purified scFv fragments however showed scFvB18, and the scFvB18 (Gly->Ser) and scFvB18(Tyr->Asp) mutants all to have a comparable affinity of 20nM for NIP-CAP.

A Western blot using an anti-geneIII antibody showed the framework mutant had suffered significantly less proteolytic cleavage than scFvB18.

Hence, the use of mutator strains generates a diverse range of mutants in phage antibodies when they are used as hosts for clones for gene III fusions. In this case some of the clones exhibit higher ELISA signals probably due to increased stability to proteolytic attack. The mutator strains can therefore be used to introduce diversity into a clone or population of clones. This diversity should generate clones with desirable characteristics such as a higher affinity or specificity. Such clones may then be selected following display of the proteins on phage.

Example 39 Expression of a Fv Fragment on the Surface of Bacteriophage by Non-Covalent Association of VH and VL domains

This example shows that functional Fv fragments can be expressed on the surface of bacteriophage by non-covalent association of VH and VL domains. One chain is expressed as a gene III fusion and the other as a soluble polypeptide. Thus Fv fragments can be used for all the strategies discussed for Fab fragments including dual combinatorial libraries (example 26).

A useful genetic selection system for stably associated Fv fragments could be established if the expression of Fv fragments as fusion proteins on the phage surface would be possible such that one V domain is fused to the gene III protein and the other V domain is expressed separately in secreted form, allowing it to associate with the V domain on the fusion protein provided the interaction strength is sufficiently high. This idea was tested in a model experiment using the V domains from the anti-hen egg lysozyme antibody D1.3 by fusing the D1.3 VK gene to gene III and separately expressing the D1.3 VH domain.

Experimentally this was achieved as follows: The vector fd-DG1 was digested with the restriction enzymes PstI and XhoI. From the Fv expression plasmid pSW1-VHd1.3-VKd1.3myc version 3/pUC119 (Hard et al., 1989 supra) a Pst I/Xho I-digested restriction fragment was isolated that carries the VH domain coding sequence (terminated by 2 stop codons), a spacer region between VH and VK genes including a ribosome-binding site for expression of the VK gene, a palB leader sequence, and, following in frame, the VK gene. This fragment was

cloned into the digested fd-DG1 vector to generate the construct fd-tet Fv D1.3. As shown on the map in Fig. 45, the dicistronic VH/VK-gene III operon is transcribed from the gene III promoter; secretion of the VH domain is achieved by the gene III protein leader, secretion of the VK-geneIII fusion protein by the palB leader sequence. For control purposes a second construct with the same fd-tet Fv D1.3 ( $\Delta$ S-stuffer) was made by a similar route as described above: the VH used in this construct carries an insertion of a 200 bp fragment in the Sty I restriction site at the junction of VH CDR 3/FR4, thus interrupting the VH with several in frame stop codons. It is known from previous work that this insertion sufficiently disrupts the VH structure to abolish binding to the antigen lysozyme when expressed either as a soluble Fv or single-chain Fv fragment or as a single-chain Fv fragment on phage surface. This construct was used as a control. TGI bacteria carrying either the fd-tet Fv D1.3, fd-tet Fv D1.3 ( $\Delta$ S-stuffer) or as single-chain wild-type control fd-tet scFv D1.3 plasmids were grown in liquid culture (medium 2xy containing 15  $\mu$ g/ml tetracycline) for 24h to produce phage particles in the supernatant. After removal of bacterial cells by centrifugation the phage titer in the supernatants was determined by re-infecting exponentially growing TGI cells with dilutions of the supernatants and scoring tetracycline-resistant colonies after plating on tetracycline-plates. The infectious phage titers achieved were  $1 \times 10^{11}$  tetracycline resistant units/ml for the single-chain wild-type control fd-tet scFv D1.3 and  $2 \times 10^{10}$  tetracycline resistant units/ml for Fv D1.3 and fd-tet Fv D1.3 and fd-tet Fv D1.3 ( $\Delta$ S-stuffer).

ELISA of hen egg lysozyme was performed as in example 2. The results are shown in Fig. 46. Phage derived from bacteria carrying and expressing the Fv construct fd-tet Fv D1.3 bind to the immobilized hen egg lysozyme, and when taking the phage titer into account, indeed apparently better than the single-chain Fv bearing phage produced by fd-tet scFv D1.3 carrying bacteria. The specificity of the reaction and the requirement for a functional VH domain is demonstrated by the fd-tet Fv D1.3 ( $\Delta$ S-stuffer) control in which disruption of the VH domain and consequently of the Fv fragment association eliminates binding to lysozyme.

An final control of the expected structure of the VK/geneIII fusion protein a Western blot was carried out. 20  $\mu$ l of phage suspensions concentrated 100 fold by two sequential precipitations with PEG were applied to a 10% SDS-PAGE gel. Electrophoretically separated and then transferred to a PVDF membrane (Immobilion, Millipore) in a semi-dry Western transfer apparatus (Hoefer). Remaining binding sites on the filter were blocked by 1h

incubation with 3% BSA in PBS, and detection of the gene III protein accomplished by incubation with a 1:1000 diluted rabbit anti-gene III antiserum for 2h, several washes in PBS/0.1% Tween 20, incubation with peroxidase-conjugated goat anti-rat immunoglobulin antibodies, washes and development with the chromogenic substrate diaminobenzidine/CoCl<sub>2</sub>/0.03% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. The Fv phage fd-tet Fv D1.3 yields a band for the gene III fusion protein (data not shown), that is intermediates in size between the bands obtained for a wild-type gene III protein from fd-DOGI and the scFv-gene III fusion protein from fd-tet scFv D1.3, thus proving the presence of a single immunoglobulin domain covalently fused to the gene III product in the Fv phage.

In summary, Fv-gene III fusions in which one V domain is fused to the gene III protein and the other V domain associates non-covalently can be presented in functionally active form on the surface of filamentous phage. This opens the possibility to genetically select for stably associated Fv fragments with defined binding specificities from V gene libraries expressed in phages. Example 40 A PCR Based Technique for one step Cloning of Human V-genes as Fab Constructs

This example describes a PCR based technique to "assemble" human Fabs by splicing together the heavy and light chain DNA with a separate piece of 'linker' DNA. A mixture of universal primers is used which should make the technique applicable to all human V-genes.

The general technique for PCR assembly of human V-genes to create a Fab construct is described. The efficiency of this technique was assessed by "assembling", cloning and expressing a human anti rhesus D (Rh-D) Fab from a IgG-K monoclonal hybridoma. We also demonstrate the potential to rescue human monoclonal antibodies from polyclonal cell populations by assembling, cloning, expressing and isolating an IgG-lambda monoclonal anti-Rh-D Fab from a polyclonal lymphoblastic cell line (UCL).

The overall strategy for the PCR assembly is shown in fig.47 and is described in more detail below. For Fab assembly, the VH-CHI and VK-CR or V lambda-C lambda light chains are amplified from first strand cDNA and gel purified. Heavy and light chain DNA are then combined together with linker DNA and flanking oligonucleotides in a new PCR reaction. This results in a full length Fab construct since the 5' end of the linker DNA is complementary to the 3' end of the CHI domain and the 3' end of the linker is complementary to the 5' end of the light chain domain. The linker DNA contains terminal residues of the human CHI domain, the bacterial leader sequence (pelB) for the light chain and the initial residues of the VK or V lambda light chain (fig.2).

Finally, after gel purification, the Fab construct is reamplified with flanking oligonucleotides containing restriction sites for cloning.

Oligonucleotide primers: In order to develop the PCR cloning of human V genes it was necessary to design a new range of human specific oligonucleotide primers.

The PCR primers at the 5' end of the VH and VK and V lambda gene exon (BACK primers) are based on sequence data extracted from the Kabat database, (Kabat, E.A. et al, Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 4th Edition, US Department of Health and Human Services, 1987) the EMBL database, the literature (Chuchana, P., et al, Eur J. Immunol. 1990, 20:1317) and unpublished data. The sequence of the VH, VK and V lambda primers are given in table 1. In addition, extended VH primers with SfiI sites at the 5' end were also designed (Table 10) for adding a restriction site after assembly.

Table 10 also shows the 3' primers (FORWARD primers) designed for the PCR based cloning of human V genes. There are two sets of these depending on whether a Fab or scFv is to be produced. For Fab assembly, the forward primer was based at the 3' end of the CHI domain, CK domain and C lambda domain. In addition, the CK and C2 FORWARD primers were also synthesized as extended versions with NotI sites at their 5' ends.

Primers complementary to the CHI forward primers and the VK and V lambda back primers were synthesized to permit generation of linker DNA by PCR amplification of a plasmid template containing the Fab linker (Table 10). To ensure adequate amplification, the primers were extended into the actual linker sequence.

A RNA preparation  
This is essentially the same as described in Example 14, but using material of human origin. In the results given in this example human hybridoma and human polyclonal lymphoblastic cell lines were used.

B cDNA preparation  
Approximately 4µg of total RNA in 20µl water was heated at 65°C for 3 minutes, quenched on ice and added to a 30µl reaction mixture resulting in a 50µl reaction mixture containing 140mM KCl, 50mM Tris, HCl (pH8.1 @ 42°C), 8mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 10mM DTT, 500µM deoxythymidine triphosphate, 500 µM deoxycytosine triphosphate, 500 µM deoxyadenosine triphosphate and 500 µM deoxyguanosine triphosphate, 80 units of human placental RNase inhibitor and 10µmol of the appropriate Forward primer (Hulgi-4CHI-FOR, Hulgi-FOR, HuCK-FOR, HuCL-FOR). Two µl (50 units) of avian myeloblastosis virus (AMV) reverse transcriptase was added, the reaction incubated at 42°C for 1 hour, heated to 100°C for 3 minutes, quenched on ice and centrifuged for 5 minutes.

C Primary PCR

For the primary PCR amplifications, an equimolar mixture of the appropriate family based BACK and FORWARD primers was used. (See specific examples 40a and 40b given later in this example). A 50ul reaction mixture was prepared containing 5ul of the supernatant from the cDNA synthesis, 20 pmol total concentration of the FORWARD primers, 250 uM dNTPs, 50mM KCl, 100mM Tris. HCl (pH 8.3), 1.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 175ug/ml BSA and 1ul (5 units) *Thermus aquaticus* (Taq) DNA polymerase (Cetus, Emeryville, CA). The reaction mixture was overlaid with paraffin oil and subjected to 30 cycles of amplification using a Techno thermal cycler. The cycle was 94°C for 1 minute (denaturation), 57°C for 1 minute (annealing) and 72°C for 1 minute (extension). The product was analyzed by running 5ul on a 2% agarose gel. The remainder was extracted twice with ether, twice with phenol/chloroform, ethanol precipitated and resuspended in 50ul of H<sub>2</sub>O.

D Preparation of linker  
To make the Fab linker DNA, 13 separate PCR reactions were performed using HulgG1-4CHIFOR and each of the reverse VK or V lambda oligonucleotides. The template was approximately 1ng of pJM-1Fab D1.3 (fig.48). The PCR reaction reagents were as described above and the cycle was 94°C:1 min, 45°C:1min and 72°C:1 min. The linker agarose gel, eluted from the gel on a Spin-X column and ethanol precipitated.

#### E Assembly PCR

For PCR assembly of a human Fab approximately 1ug of a primary heavy chain amplification and 1ug of a primary light chain amplification were mixed with approximately 250ng of the appropriate linker DNA in a PCR reaction mixture without primers and cycled 7 times (94°C: 2 min, 72°C:2.5 min) to join the fragments. The reaction mixture was then amplified for 25 cycles (94°C:1 min, 68°C:72°C:1 min, 72°C:2.5 min) after the addition of 20 pmol of the appropriate flanking BACK and FORWARD primers.

The assembled products were gel purified and reamplified for 25 cycles (94°C:1 min, 55°C:1 min, 72°C:25min) with the flanking oligonucleotides containing the appended restriction sites. PCR buffers and NTPs were as described previously.

#### F Specific examples of PCR assembly of human immunoglobulin genes

a. PCR assembly of a Fab from a human hybridoma: the human monoclonal anti Rh-D cell lines Fog-1 (IgG-k) was derived from EBV transformation of the PBs of a Rh-D negative blood donor immunized with Rh-D positive blood and has been previously described (Molamed, M.D., et al., J. Immunological Methods, 1987, 104:245) (Hughes-Jones N.C., et al., Biochem. J. 1990, 268:135) (Gorick, B.D. et

al., Vox. Sang. 1988, 55:165) Total RNA was prepared from approximately 10<sup>7</sup> hybridoma cells. First strand cDNA synthesis was performed as described above using the primary HulgG1-4CHIFOR and HUGFOR. Primary PCR were performed for the VH-CH1 using a mixture of the 6 HUVHACK primers and HulgG1-4CHIFOR and for the VK-CK using a mixture of the 6 HUVHACK primers and HUGFOR. A Fab construct was assembled as described above, restricted with SfiI and NotI, gel purified and ligated into pJM-1Fab D1.3 restricted with SfiI and NotI. The ligation mixture was used to transform competent *E. coli* E.M.C. cells. Ninety-six clones were toothpicked into media in microtitre plate wells, grown to mid-log phase at 30°C and then expression of the Fab was induced by heat shocking at 42°C for 30 min followed by growing for 4 hours at 37°C. The ninety-six clones were then screened for anti-Rh-D activity as described below.

b. Assembly of human Fabs from a polyclonal (LCL): A polyclonal LCL "OG" was derived from EBV transformation of approximately 10<sup>7</sup> peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) from a Rh-D negative donor immunized with Rh-D positive red blood cells. The cells were plated at a concentration of approximately 10<sup>5</sup> cells per well. Positive wells were identified by screening the cells harvested and then subcloned once. Typing of the cells indicated that an IgG-lambda antibody was being produced. At this stage, total RNA was prepared from approximately 10<sup>6</sup> cells. First strand cDNA synthesis was performed as described above using the primers HulgG1-4CHIFOR and HUGFOR. Primary PCR were performed for the VH-CH1 using a mixture of the 6 HUVHACK2 primers and HulgG1-4CHIFOR and for the V lambda-C lambda using a mixture of the 7 HUVHACK primers and HUC FOR. Restriction, cloning and screening proceeded as described. To determine the diversity of the clones, the VH and V lambda genes of 15 clones were PCR amplified, restricted with the frequent cutting restriction enzyme BstNI and analyzed on a 4% agarose gel (see example 20).

Assay for anti-Rh-D activity and demonstration of specificity: A 5% (vol/vol) suspension of either Rh-D positive (ORAR2) or Rh-D negative (Orr) erythrocytes in phosphate buffered saline (PBS, pH 7.3) were incubated with a papain solution for 10 min at 37°C. The erythrocytes were washed three times in PBS and a 1% (vol/vol) suspension of erythrocytes was made up in PBS supplemented with 1% (vol/vol) of bovine serum albumin (BSA). Fifty ul of a papain treated erythrocyte suspension and 50ul of phage supernatant were placed in the wells of round bottom microtitre plates and the plates were placed on a Titertek plate shaker for 2 min. After 15 min incubation at 37°C 100 ul of PBS/BSA was added to each well. The plates were centrifuged at 200 g

for 1 min and the supernatant was discarded. The erythrocytes were resuspended in the remaining PBS/BSA and the Fab fragments were crosslinked by addition of the 9E10 monoclonal antibody (50ul a 1ug/ml solution in PBS/BSA) directed against the myc peptide tag (Ward, E.S., et al., Nature 1989, supra). The plates were placed at room temperature (RT) until sedimentation had occurred. Agglutination of erythrocytes caused a diffuse button of erythrocytes and the results were evaluated macroscopically. Specificity was confirmed with a standard prepaanized (as above) panel of 9 erythrocyte suspensions in PBS (all suspensions blood group O, 4 D positive and 5 D negative) known to have homozygous expression of all the clinically relevant erythrocyte blood group alloantigens. The number of copies of the D antigen on the D positive cells varied between 10,000 and 20,000 per erythrocyte depending on the Rh genotype. Briefly, 50 ul phage supernatant in PBS supplemented with 2% (vol/vol) skimmed milk was mixed with 50 ul of a 2% erythrocyte suspension in PBS in glass tubes and incubated for 15 min at 37°C. After one wash with PBS/BSA the erythrocytes were pelleted and resuspended in 50 ul donkey anti-human lambda light chain (Sigma 19527, diluted 1:40 in PBS/BSA). The tubes were centrifuged for 1 min at 200g and agglutination was read macroscopically using "tip and roll" method.

#### Results

**a PCR assembly of a Fab from a human hybridoma:** A single band of the correct size was obtained after amplification. Thirty-eight of 96 clones (40%) screened specifically agglutinated Rh-D positive but not Rh-D negative red blood cells. The results demonstrate a high frequency of successful splicing in the assembly process and the potential of this technique for one step cloning of human hybridomas.

**b Assembly of human Fabs from a polyclonal lymphoblastic cell line (LCL):** Analysis of the diversity of the clones indicated that 3 different heavy chain families and 2 different light chain families were present. Five anti-Rh-D specific clones were identified out of 96 screened. The VH and Vλ chains had identical nucleotide sequences in each clone and were typical of anti-Rh-D V-genes (unpublished results). The results demonstrate the potential of this technique to assemble, clone, and isolate human antibody fragments from polyclonal cell populations (see also section on isolation of specific binding activities from an 'unimmunized' human library (examples 42 and 43).

#### Example 41

**Selection of Phage Displaying a Human Fab Fragment**

directed against the Rhesus-D Antigen by binding to Cells displaying the Rhesus D Antigen on their Surface

A large number of important antigens are integral components of cell surface membranes, i.e. they are cell surface antigens. These include tumor specific antigens and red and white blood cell surface antigens. In many instances, it would be important to isolate antibodies against these antigens. For example, antibodies directed against the rhesus-D (Rh-D) antigen on red blood cells are used both diagnostically and therapeutically. Many of these antigens are difficult to purify and some, like Rh-D, are not biologically active when isolated from the membrane. Thus, it would be useful to be able to affinity purify antibody fragments displayed on the surface of bacteriophage directly on cell surface antigens. To test the feasibility of affinity purification on cell surface antigens, the anti-Rh-D human monoclonal antibody Fog-B was displayed as a Fab fragment on the surface of bacteriophage fd. The displayed Fog-B Fab fragment bound antigen as determined by agglutination assay and could be affinity purified on the basis of its binding on the surface of Rh-D positive red blood cells but not Rh-D negative red blood cells.

**Materials and Methods**

Construction of a clone encoding an anti-Rh-D Fab fragment in the phagemid pHEM1 and display of the Fab fragment on the surface of bacteriophage fd.

The human hybridoma Fog-B has been previously described (N.C. Hughes-Jones et al Biochem. J. 268 135 (1990)). It produces an IgG-1/lambda antibody which binds the Rh-D antigen. RNA was prepared from 10<sup>7</sup> hybridoma cells using a modified method of Cathala (as described in example 14) and 1st strand cDNA synthesized using specific immunoglobulin heavy and light chain primers (HUVHIFOR [example 40] and HUCλ FOR (5'-GGA ATT CTT ATG AAG ATT CTG TAG GGG CCA C-3')) as described in example 14. The VH gene was subsequently amplified from an aliquot of the 1st strand cDNA using HUVH6BACK and HUVHIFOR. The Vλ gene was amplified using a Vλ primer specific for Fog-B (VλFog-B, 5'-AAC CAG CCA TGG CC AGT CTG TGT GGA CCG AGC C-3'). The PCR conditions were as described in example 40. The PCR products were analyzed by running 5μl on a 2% agarose gel. The remainder was extracted twice with ether, twice with phenol/chloroform, ethanol precipitated and resuspended in 50μl of H<sub>2</sub>O. The amplified VH DNA was digested with PstI and BstII, and the amplified Vλ-Cλ DNA with NcoI and EcoRI. The fragments were purified on a 2% agarose gel, extracted using GeneClean, and sequentially ligated into the soluble expression vector pJM-1 Fab D1.3 (Fig 48). Clones containing the correct insert were initially identified by restriction analysis and verified by assay

of expressed soluble Fab (see example 23 for induction conditions). The Fog-B Fab cassette was amplified from pJM-1 by PCR using HUVHACK-Sfi and Hu CA-Not, digested with the appropriate restriction enzymes and ligated into pHEN1. Clones containing the correct insert were identified initially by restriction analysis and subsequently by assay (see example 25 for induction conditions).

Assay for soluble Fog-B Fab fragment and phage displayed Fog-B Fab fragment for anti-Rh-D activity and documentation of specificity.

Assay of the soluble expressed Fab was performed on unconcentrated E.coli supernatant. Assay of Fog-B displayed on the phage surface was performed on phage that had been concentrated 10 fold by PEG precipitation and then resuspended in PBS. The assays for activity and specificity are as described in example.

Cell surface affinity purification of phage displaying Fog-B anti-Rh-D Fab fragment

Purified Fog-B phage was mixed with purified phage Fd-Tet CAT-1 displaying the anti-lysozyme scFv D1.3 (pABD1.3) in a ratio of approximately 1 Fog-B:50 scFvD1.3. Prepaenitized erythrocytes (OR2R2 [Rhesus positive] or Orr [Rhesus negative]) were suspended in PBS supplemented with 2% skimmed milk powder in a concentration of 4x10<sup>7</sup>/ml. One ml of this suspension was mixed with 10<sup>11</sup> phage suspended in 2 ml of PBS supplemented with 2% skimmed milk and incubated for 30 min at room temperature under continuous rotation. The erythrocytes were washed three times with an excess of ice-cold PBS (10 ml per wash) and subsequently pelleted. The phage were eluted from the cells by resuspending in 200 µl of 76 mM citric acid pH 2.8 in PBS for 1 min. The cells were then pelleted by centrifugation for 1 min at 3000 rpm and the supernatant containing the eluted phage was neutralized by adding 200 µl of 240 mM Tris-base, 22mM Disodium hydrogen phosphate in 1% w/vol albumin. Serial dilutions of the eluate was used to infect TGI cells. Fog-B Fab phage were selected on ampicillin plates and scFvD1.3 phage on tetracycline plates and the titre of each determined prior to selection, after selection on rhesus-D negative cells and after selection on rhesus-D positive cells.

#### Results

Fog-B Fab fragment displayed on the surface of the phage derived from the phagemid pHEN clone specifically agglutinated rhesus-D positive but not rhesus D-negative red blood cells. Affinity purification of the Fog-B Fab phagemid on Rh-D positive red blood cells resulted in an enrichment from 1:50 to 1500:1 (Fog-B Fab:scFvD1.3), whereas purification on Rh-D negative red blood cells demonstrated essentially no enrichment (10 fold).

		TITRE	RATIO
	Fog-B Fab	scFvD1.3	Fog-B Fab/scFvD1.3
5	Prior to selection	1.0 x 10 <sup>8</sup>	5.0 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
	Selection on Rh-D negative cells	2.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
10	Selection on Rh-D positive cells	6.0 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	4.0 x 10 <sup>3</sup>
			1500:1

#### Example 42 A PCR Based Technique for One Step Cloning of Human scFv Constructs

Assembly of human scFv is similar to the assembly of mouse scFvs described in example 14. To develop the PCR cloning of human V genes it was necessary to design a new range of human specific oligonucleotide primers (table 10). The use of these primers for the generation of human Fabs is described in example 40. The assembly of human scFvs is essentially the same but requires a set of FORWARD primers complementary to the J segments of the VH, VK and V lambda genes. (For Fabs FORWARD primers complementary to the constant region are used.) The J segment specific primers were designed based on the published JH, JK and J lambda sequences (Kabat, E.A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 4th Edition, US Department of Health and Human Services, 1987).

In addition, a different linker is needed for scFvs than for Fabs so for human scFvs a new set of primers was needed to prepare the linker. Primers complementary to the JH forward primers and the VK and V lambda back primers were synthesized to permit generation of linker DNA by PCR amplification of a plasmid template containing the scFv linker (Table 10, Fig. 49). To ensure adequate amplification, the primers were extended into the actual linker sequence. Using these primers to make the scFv linker DNA, 52 separate PCR reactions were performed using each of the 4 reverse JH primers in combination with each of the 13 reverse VK and V lambda oligonucleotides. The template was approximately 1ng of pSW2scD1.3 (Ward, E.S. 1989 supra) containing the short peptide (Gly48ar)3 (Huston, J.S. et al., Gene 1989, 77:61).

A specific example of PCR assembly of a human scFv library.

This example describes the generation of a human library of scFvs made from an unimmunized human:

500ml of blood, containing approximately 10<sup>8</sup> B-cells, was obtained from a healthy volunteer blood donor. The white cells were separated on Ficoll and RNA was prepared as described in example 14.

Twenty percent of the RNA, containing the genetic

material from approximately  $2 \times 10^7$  B-cells, was used for cDNA preparation as described in example 40. Heavy chains originating from IgG and IgM antibodies were kept separate by priming cDNA synthesis with either an IgG specific primer (HuIgG1-4CH1FOR) or an IgM specific primer (HuIgMFOR). Aliquots of the cDNA was used to generate four separate scFv libraries (IgG-K, IgG-lambda, IgM-K and IgM-lambda) as described in example 40. The resulting libraries were purified on 1.5% agarose, electrophoresed and ethanol precipitated. For subsequent cloning, the K and lambda libraries were combined giving separate IgG and IgM libraries. Cloning of the library: The purified scFv fragments (1-4ug) were digested with the restriction enzymes NotI and either SfiI or NcoI. After digestion, the fragments were extracted with phenol/chloroform, ethanol precipitated. The digested fragments were ligated into either SfiI-NotI or NcoI-NotI digested, agarose gel electrophoresis purified pHEM1 DNA (6ug) (see example 24), in a 100 µl ligation mix with 2,000 U T4 DNA ligase (New England Biolabs) overnight at room temperature. The ligation mix was purified by phenol extraction and ethanol precipitated. The ligated DNA was resuspended in 10 µl of water, and 2.5 µl samples were electroporated into E.coli TGI (50 µl). Cells were grown in 1 ml SOC for 1 hr and then plated on 2 x TY medium with 100 µg/ml ampicillin and 1% glucose (AMP-GLU), in 243 x 243 mm dishes (Nunc). After overnight growth colonies were scraped off the plates into 10 ml 2 x TY containing AMP-GLU and 15% glycerol for storage at -70°C as a library stock.

Cloning into SfiI-NotI and NcoI-NotI digested pHEM1 yielded libraries of  $10^7$  and  $2 \times 10^7$  clones respectively for the IgM libraries and approximately  $5 \times 10^7$  clones for each of the two IgG libraries.

Example 43 Isolation of binding activities from a library of scFvs from an unimmunized human

The ability to select binding activities from human antibody libraries displayed on the surface of phage should prove even more important than isolation of binding activities from murine libraries. This is because the standard way of generating antibodies via hybridoma technology has not had the success with human antibodies that has been achieved with mouse. While in some instances it will be possible to make libraries from immunized humans, in many cases, it will not prove possible to immunize due to toxicity or lack of availability of an appropriate immunogen or ethical considerations. Alternatively, binding activities could be isolated from libraries made from individuals with diseases in which therapeutic antibodies are generated by

antibody libraries displayed on the surface of phage should prove even more important than isolation of binding activities from murine libraries. This is because the standard way of generating antibodies via hybridoma technology has not had the success with human antibodies that has been achieved with mouse. While in some instances it will be possible to make libraries from immunized humans, in many cases, it will not prove possible to immunize due to toxicity or lack of availability of an appropriate immunogen or ethical considerations. Alternatively, binding activities could be isolated from libraries made from individuals with diseases in which therapeutic antibodies are generated by

the immune response. However, in many cases, the antibody producing cells will be located in the spleen and not available in the circulating pool of peripheral blood lymphocytes (the most easily accessible material for generating the library). In addition, in diseases associated with immunosuppression, therapeutic antibodies may not be produced.

An alternative approach would be to isolate binding activities from a library made from an unimmunized individual. This approach is based on estimates that a primary repertoire of  $10^7$  different antibodies is likely to recognize over 99% of epitopes with an affinity constant of  $10^5$  M<sup>-1</sup> or better. (Pavrlson, A.S. Immunol. Rev. (1989) 110:5). While this may not produce high affinity antibodies, affinity could be boosted by mutation of the V-genes and/or by using the isolated VH domain in a hierarchical approach with a library of light chains (or vice versa). In this section, we demonstrate the feasibility of this approach by isolating specific antigen binding activities against three different antigens from a library of scFvs from an unimmunized human.

#### Materials and Methods

The generation of the human scFv library used for the isolation of binding activities described in this example is detailed in example 42.

Estimation of diversity of original and selected libraries: Recombinant clones were screened before and after selection by PCR (example 20) with primers LMB3 (which sits 5' of the pelt leader sequence and is identical to the reverse sequencing primer (-40 n) of pUC19) and fd-SEQ1 (see example 37) followed by digestion with the frequent-cutting enzyme BstNI. Analysis of 48 clones from each unselected library indicated that 90% of the clones had an insert, and the libraries appeared to be extremely diverse as judged by the BstNI restriction pattern.

Rescue of phagemid libraries for enrichment experiments: To rescue phagemid particles from the library, 100 ml 2 x TY containing AMP-GLU (see example 42) was inoculated with  $10^8$  bacteria taken from the library (prepared in example 42) (approx. 10 µl) and grown for 1.5 hr, shaking at 37°C. Cells were spun down (IEC-centrifuge, 4 K, 15 min) and resuspended in 100 ml prewarmed (37°C) 2 x TY-AMP (see example 41) medium,  $2 \times 10^{10}$  pfu of VCS-M13 (Stratagene) particles added and incubated 30 min at 37°C without shaking. Cells were then transferred to 900 ml 2 x TY containing ampicillin (100 µg/ml) and kanamycin (25 µg/ml) (AMP-KAN), and grown overnight, while shaking at 37°C. Phage particles were purified and concentrated by three PEG-precipitations (see materials and methods) and resuspended in PBS to  $10^{13}$  TU/ml (ampicillin resistant



5 mM Tris-HCl pH 8.5) + 500 mM NaCl, 5 ml of 50 mM Tris-HCl (pH 9.5) + 500 mM NaCl and finally 5 ml of 50 mM sodium hydrogen carbonate pH 9.6. Bound phage was eluted using 1.5 ml 100 mM triethylamine and neutralised with 1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.4).

For selection of turkey egg white lysozyme binders, the rescue-tube enrichment-plating cycle or rescue-column-plating cycle was repeated 4 times, after which phageamid clones were analysed for binding by ELISA.

Rescue of individual phageamid clones for ELISA: Clones resulting from reinoculated and plated phage particles eluted after 4 rounds of enrichment, were inoculated into 150 µl of 2 x TY-AMP-Glu in 96-well plates (coll wells, Nunc). grown with shaking (250rpm) overnight at 37°C.

A 96-well plate replicator ('plunger') was used to inoculate approximately 4 µl of the overnight cultures on the master plate into 200 µl from 2 x TY-AMP-Glu. After 1 hr, 50 µl 2 x TY-AMP-Glu containing 10<sup>6</sup> pfu of VCS-M13 was added to each well, and the plate incubated at 37°C for 45 min, followed by shaking the plate at 37°C for 1 hr. Glucose was then removed by spinning down the cells (4K, 15 min), and aspirating the supernatant with a drawn out glass pasteur pipet. Cells were resuspended in 200 µl 2 x TY-AMP-Glu (kanamycin 50 µg/ml) and grown 20 hr, shaking 37°C. Unconcentrated supernatant containing phage was taken for analysis by ELISA.

Analysis for binding to phoX:BSA, BSA or lysozyme was performed by ELISA (see example 9), with 100 µg/ml phoX:BSA or BSA, or 3 mg/ml turkey egg white lysozyme used for coating. Determination of cross reactivity to unrelated antigens with the isolated clones was also determined by ELISA on plates coated with 100 µg/ml of an irrelevant antigen (bovine liver haemoglobin (KLH), ovalbumin, chymotrypsinogen, cytochrome C, thyroglobulin, GAP-BH (glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase), or trypsin inhibitor).

Characterization of ELISA positive clones: All antigen specific clones isolated were checked for cross reactivity against a panel of irrelevant antigens as described above. The diversity of the clones was determined by PCR screening as described above and at least two clones from each restriction pattern were sequenced by the dideoxy chain termination method.

Results

Isolation and characterization of phoX:BSA binders: After 4 rounds of selection, ELISA-positive clones were isolated for phoX:BSA. All clones originated from the IgM library. Of 96 clones analysed, 43 clones were binding to both phoX:BSA and BSA, with OEs ranging from 0.4 to 1.3 (background 0.125). These clones are

clones).

Enrichment for phoX:BSA binders by selection on tubes: For enrichment, a 75 x 12 mm Nunc-immotube (Maxisorp; Cat. No. 4-44202) was coated with 4 ml phoX:BSA (1 mg/ml; 14 phoX per BSA in 50 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub> pH 9.6 buffer) overnight at room temperature. After washing three times with PBS, the tube was incubated for 2 hr at 37°C with PBS containing 2 $\times$  Marvel (2 $\times$  MPBS) for blocking. Following three PBS washes, phageamid particles (10<sup>13</sup> TU) in 4 ml of 2 $\times$  MPBS were added, incubated 30 min at room temperature on a rotating turntable and left for a further 1.5 hours.

Tubes were then washed with 20 washes of PBS, 0.1 $\times$  Tween 20 and 20 washes PBS (each washing step was performed by pouring buffer in and out immediately). Bound phage particles were eluted from the tube by adding 1 ml 100 mM triethylamine pH 11.5 and rotating for 15 min. The eluted material was immediately neutralised by adding 0.5 ml 1.0 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.4 and vortexed. Phage was stored at 4°C.

Eluted phage (in 1.5 ml) was used to infect 8 ml logarithmic growing E.coli TGI cells in 15-ml 2 x TY medium, and plated on AMP-Glu plates as above yielding on average 10<sup>7</sup> phage infected colonies.

For selection of phoX:BSA binders, the rescue-tube enrichment-plating cycle was repeated 4 times, after which phageamid clones were analysed for binding by ELISA.

Enrichment for lysozyme binders by panning and on columns: A petri dish (35 x 10 mm Falcon 3001 Tissue Culture dish) was used for enrichment by panning. During all steps, the plates were rocked on an A600 rocking plate (Raven Scientific). Plates were coated overnight with 1 ml turkey egg white lysozyme (3 mg/ml) in 50 mM sodium hydrogen carbonate (pH 9.6), washed three times with 2 ml PBS, and blocked with 2 ml 2 $\times$  MPBS at room temperature for 2 hours. After three PBS washes approximately 10<sup>12</sup> TU phage particles in 1 ml 2 $\times$  MPBS were added per plate, and left rocking for 2 hr at room temperature. Plates were washed for 5 min with 2 ml of the following solutions: 5 times PBS, PBS-Tween (0.02 $\times$  Tween-20), 50 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5) + 500 mM NaCl, 50 mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.5) + 500 mM NaCl, 500 mM Tris-HCl (pH 9.5) + 500 mM NaCl and finally 50 mM sodium hydrogen carbonate pH 9.6. Bound phage particles were then eluted by adding 1 ml 100 mM triethylamine pH 11.5 and rocking for 5 min before neutralising with 1 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.4) (as above).

Alternatively, 1 ml turkey egg white lysozyme-Sepharose columns were used for affinity purification (McCafferty, J., et al., Nature 1990, 348: 552). Columns were washed extensively with PBS, blocked with 15 ml 2 $\times$  MPBS, and phage (10<sup>12</sup> TU) in 1 ml 2 $\times$  MPBS loaded. After washing with 50 ml PBS, 10 ml PBS-Tween (PBS + 0.02 $\times$  Tween-20), 5 ml of 50 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5) + 500 mM NaCl,

designated as BSA binders. The binding to BSA seemed to be specific, since none of the 11 clones analysed gave a signal above background when used in an ELISA with KLH, ovalbumin, chymotrypsinogen, cytochrome c, lysozyme, thyroglobulin, GAP-DH, or trypsin inhibitor. all BSA binding clones had the same BstNI restriction pattern, and 14 clones were completely sequenced. Thirteen of the fourteen clones had the same sequence, the VH was derived from a human VH3 family gene and the VL from a human V lambda 3 family gene (Table 1). The other BSA binder was derived from a human VH4 family gene and a human VK1 family gene (data not shown).

One clone was isolated which bound to phox:BSA only (OD 0.3), and bound phage could be completed off completely by adding 0.02 mM 4-ε-amino-caproic acid methylene 2-phenyl-oxazol-5-one (phox-CAP) as a competitor. Also no binding above background could be detected to the panel of irrelevant proteins described above. The sequence revealed a VH derived from a human VH1 family gene and a VL derived from a human V lambda 1 family gene (Table 1).

Isolation and characterisation of lysozyme binders:  
After 4 rounds of selection, 50 ELISA-positive clones were isolated for turkey lysozyme. The majority of the clones, greater than 95%, were from the IgM library. The binding to lysozyme seemed to be specific, since none of the clones analysed gave a signal above background when used in an ELISA with KLH, ovalbumin, chymotrypsinogen, cytochrome c, thyroglobulin, GAP-DH, or trypsin inhibitor. The lysozyme binding clones gave 3 different BstNI restriction patterns, and at least 2 clones from each restriction pattern were completely sequenced. The sequences indicated the presence of 4 unique human VH-VL combinations. (Table 1).

#### Conclusion

The results indicate that antigen binding activities can be isolated from repertoires of scFvs prepared from IgM cDNA from human volunteers that have not been specifically immunized.

#### Example 44

Rescue of human IgM library using helper phage lacking gene 3 (Δg3)

This example describes the rescue of gene 3 fusions from a human library using a helper phage with a gene 3 deletion.

100 µl of bacterial stock of the IgM phagemid library prepared as described (example 42), containing 5x10<sup>8</sup> bacteria, was used to inoculate 100mls of 2xTY medium containing 100µg/ml ampicillin, 2% glucose (TY/Amp/Glu). This was grown at 37°C for 2.5 hours. 10 mls of this culture was added to 90 mls of prewarmed TY/Amp/Glu and infection carried out by adding 10mls of a

200 fold concentrate of K07 helper phage lacking gene 3 (M13K07gIIIΔNo.3) (example 34) and incubating for 1 hour at 37°C without shaking. Preparation of M13K07gIII No.3 was as described in example 34. After centrifugation at 4,000 r.p.m. for 10 minutes the bacteria were resuspended in 100 mls of 2 x TY medium containing 100 µg/ml ampicillin (with no glucose). Titration of the culture at this point revealed that there were 1.9x10<sup>8</sup> infected bacteria as judged by their ability to grow on plates containing both ampicillin (100µg/ml) and kanamycin (50µg/ml). Incubation was continued for 1 hour with shaking before transferring to 2.5 litres of 2xTY medium containing 100µg/ml ampicillin, 50µg/ml kanamycin, contained in five 2.5 litre flasks. This culture was incubated for 16 hours and the supernatant prepared by centrifugation. (10-15 minutes at 10,000 r.p.m. in a Sorvall RC5S centrifuge at 4°C). Phage particles were harvested by adding 1/5th volume of 20% polyethylene glycol. 2.5 M-NaCl, standing at 4°C for 30 minutes and centrifuging as above. The resulting pellet was resuspended in 40mls of 10mM Tris, 0.1mM EDTA pH 7.4 and bacterial debris removed by centrifugation as above. The packaged phagemid preparation was then re-precipitated, collected as above and resuspended in 10mls of 10mM Tris, 0.1mM EDTA pH 7.4. The litre of this preparation was 4.1x10<sup>13</sup> transducing units/ml (ampicillin resistance).

Tubes coated with OK-BSA were prepared as described in example 45. For panning the phagemid library from example 42. The rescued library was also panned against tubes coated with bovine thyroglobulin (Sigma). These were coated at a concentration of 1mg/ml thyroglobulin in 50mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub> pH9.6 at 37°C, overnight. Tubes were blocked with PBS containing 2% milk powder (PBS/M) and incubated with 1ml of the rescued phagemid library (the equivalent of 250mls of culture supernatant) mixed with 3mls of PBS/M for 3 hours. Washing, elution, neutralisation and infection were as described in example 45.

Results: Panning against oxazalone - BSA

The first round of panning against OK-BSA yielded 2.8x10<sup>6</sup> phage. A large bacterial plate with 1.4x10<sup>6</sup> colonies derived from this eluate was scraped into 10mls of 2xTY, 20% glycerol, shaken for 10 minutes, aliquoted and stored. This was also used to inoculate a fresh culture for rescue with M13K07gIII No.3. (Bacteria and OK-BSA are named OXPAN1. Bacteria or rescued phage derived from second and third round panning are named OXPAN2 and OXPAN3 respectively) Rescue of phagemid with M13K07gIII No.3 after each round of panning was essentially as described above but using 5ml volumes of the initial cultures in TY/Amp/Glu, using 1ml of helper phage and transferring to 100-500mls of 2xTY medium



126

For thyroglobulin, 18 out of 40 clones were positive (0.3-2.0 O.D. after 30 minutes). (A phage control (vector pCMV3) gave a reading of 0.07 O.D.). In addition, positives were also seen on the polyclonal phage preparations THYPAN1 (0.314 O.D.) and THYPAN2 (0.189 O.D.) compared with phage derived from the original non-panned phagemid library (0.069 O.D.). All polyclonal phage were PEG precipitated and used at a 10 fold concentration.

PCR reactions and Batn1 digests were carried out on the positive clones as described above and six different patterns of DNA fragments were obtained showing that at least six different clones had been isolated.

For OX-BSA after two rounds of panning, 30 of 48 clones were positive by ELISA and after three rounds, 42 of 48 were positive. In a separate experiment, positive signal was obtained from the polyclonal phage preparations OXPAN1 (0.988 OD) and OXPAN2 (1.717 OD) compared with phage derived from the polyclonal phage phagemid library (0.186 O.D.) after 30 minutes.

Selected clones (11 anti-thyroglobulin or OX-BSA) representing each of the different Batn1 restriction digest patterns were assayed for binding to a panel of irrelevant antigens. ELISA plates were coated with antigen (100 µl/ml in 50 mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, pH 9.6) by overnight incubation at 37°C. The panel of antigens consisted of keyhole limpet haemocyanin, hen egg lysozyme, bovine serum albumin, ovalbumin, cytochrome c, chymotrypsinogen, trypsin inhibitor, GAP-D11 (glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase), bovine thyroglobulin and oxazolone-BSA. Duplicate samples of phage supernatant (80 µl + 20 µl 5% PBS, 10% milk powder) were added to each antigen and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. The ELISA was carried out as described in example 18.

Each of the thyroglobulin specific clones (11 from 11) were positive for thyroglobulin (OD 0.12 - 0.76) but after 60 minutes showed no binding (OD < 0.03) to any of the 9 irrelevant antigens. Similarly of the 5 OX-BSA specific clones 3 had an OD 0.07 - 0.52 compared to ODs < 0.02 for the irrelevant antigens. None of the 5 clones had any binding to BSA alone.

Thus, positive clones can be isolated after only two rounds of panning by rescuing with M13KO7gIII No.3. In addition there is a greater likelihood with this helper of generating phage particles with more than one intact antibody molecule. This will potentially increase the avidity of phage-antibodies and may enable isolation of clones of weaker affinity.

Example 45: Alteration of fine specificity of scFv D1.3 displayed on phage by mutagenesis and selection on immobilised turkey lysozyme

125

containing 100µg/ml ampicillin, 50µg/ml kanamycin. Second and third round panning stops were as described above for the first round, but using 0.8-1.0mls of 100 fold concentrated phage (the equivalent of 80-100 mls of culture supernatant). The eluate from the second round panning contained 8x10<sup>8</sup> infectious particles and the eluate from the third round panning contained 3.3x10<sup>9</sup> infectious particles.

Panning against thyroglobulin  
The first round panning against thyroglobulin yielded 2.52x10<sup>5</sup> infectious particles. Half of the eluate was used to generate 1.25x10<sup>5</sup> bacterial colonies on a large plate. These colonies were scraped into 10mls of 2xTY, 20% glycerol, shaken for 10 minutes, aliquoted and stored. These bacteria and rescued phage derived from them are termed THYPAN1, and used to inoculate a fresh culture for rescue with M13KO7gIII No.3 to give a polyclonal rescued phage preparation. Material similarly derived from second and third round panning are termed THYPAN2 and THYPAN3 respectively. Second and third round panning with thyroglobulin were as described for second and third round OX-BSA panning. The eluate from the second round panning contained 8x10<sup>7</sup> transducing units and the eluate from the third round panning contained 6x10<sup>7</sup> infectious particles.

ELISA screening of clones derived by panning  
40 colonies derived from the third round of panning against thyroglobulin (THYPAN3) were picked into a 96 well plate and grown overnight at 37°C in 200µl of TY/Amp/Glu. Similarly 48 colonies from two rounds and 48 colonies from three rounds of panning against OX-BSA were grown (OX-PAN2 and OX-PAN3). Polyclonal phage were prepared at the same time. Next day 5µl from each culture was transferred to 100µl of fresh prewarmed TY/Amp/Glu grown for 1.5 hours and M13KO7gIII No.3 added (2 x 10<sup>5</sup> infectious phage per well in 100µl of TY/Amp/Glu). These were incubated for 1 hour at 37°C without shaking, centrifuged at 4,000 r.p.m. for 10 minutes, resuspended in 150µl of 2xTY medium containing 100µg/ml ampicillin and incubated for a further hour with shaking before adding to 2mls of medium containing 100µg/ml ampicillin, 50µg/ml kanamycin. After overnight growth the cultures were centrifuged at 4,000 r.p.m. for 10 minutes and the supernatants collected. ELISA plates used to screen THYPAN3 clones were coated at 37°C overnight with 200µg/ml thyroglobulin in 50mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub>pH9.6. Plates used for OXPAN2 and OXPAN3 were coated at 100µg/ml OX-BSA in PBS at 37°C overnight.

120µl of culture supernatant was mixed with 30µl of 5x PBS, 10% milk powder and incubated at room temperature for 2 hours at room temperature. ELISAs were carried out as described in example 18.

The D1.3 antibody binds hen egg lysozyme (HEL) with an affinity constant of  $4.5 \times 10^6 M^{-1}$  whereas it binds turkey egg lysozyme (TEL) with an affinity of  $<10^5 M^{-1}$ . (Harper et al (1987) Molecular Immunology 24 p97-108, Amit et al (1986) Science 233 p747-753).

It has been suggested that this is because the glutamine residue present at position 121 of HEL (glu121) is represented by histidine residue at the same position in TEL. Thus mutagenising the D1.3 antibody residues which interact with glu121 of HEL may facilitate binding to TEL.

According to Amit et al, supra, tyrosine at amino acid position 32, phenylalanine at position 91 and tryptophan at position 92 of the light chain interact with glu121 of HEL. In addition tyrosine at position 101 of the heavy chain also interacts. None of these residues are predicted to be involved in determining the main chain conformation of the antibody variable regions (Chothia and Lesk (1987) Journal of Molecular Biology 196, p901-917).

#### Mutagenesis of pCAT3SCFVD1.3

The oligonucleotides mutL91,92, was prepared to randomise phenylalanine at position 91 (L91) and tryptophan at position 92 (L92) of the light chain. The oligonucleotides mutL32, was prepared to randomise tyrosine at light chain position 32 (L32) and the oligonucleotides mutH101 was prepared to randomise tyrosine at position 101 of the heavy chain (H101).

mutL91,92:  
5' CGT CCG AGG AGT ACT MNV NNN ATG TTG ACA GTA ATA 3'

mutL32:  
5' CTG ATA CCA TGC TAA NNN ATT GTG ATT CCC 3'

mutH101:  
5' CCA GTA GTC AAG CCT NNN ATC TCT TCT GGC 3'

(N represents a random insertion of equal amounts of A, C, G or T) in vitro mutagenesis of the phagemid vector, pCAT3SCFVD1.3 (example 17) with the oligonucleotide, mutL91,92 was carried out using an in vitro mutagenesis kit (Amersham). The resultant DNA was transformed by electroporation into TGI cells using a Bio-Rad electroporator. 78,000 clones were obtained and these were scraped into 15mls of 2xTY/20% glycerol. This pool was called D1.3L91L92. Single stranded DNA was prepared by rescue with M13K07 as described in Sambrook et al, 1989 supra, and sequenced with the primer FDTSEQ1, using a Sequenase sequencing kit (United States Biochemical Corporation).

This revealed that the DNA had been successfully mutagenised as judged by the presence of bands in all four DNA sequencing tracks at the nucleotide positions encoding L91 and L92. This mutagenised single stranded DNA was subjected to a further round of mutagenesis as

above, using either mutL32 or mutH101 oligonucleotides. Mutagenesis with mutL32 gave rise to 71,000 clones (pool called D1.3L32) while mutH101 gave 102,000 clones (pool called D1.3H101). These clones were scraped into 15mls of 2xTY/20% glycerol. Single stranded DNA derived from each pool was sequenced with the oligonucleotides D1.3L40 and LINKS01 respectively, as described above, and shown to be correctly randomised.

D1.3L40:  
5' CAG GAG CTG AGG ACA TTT TCC 3'

LINKS01:  
5' TCC GCC TGA ACC GCC TCC ACC 3'

Preparation of resoned phage for affinity purification  
10-20 $\mu$ l of bacteria derived from each mutagenised pool (plate scrapes) was used to inoculate 5mls of TY/Glu/Amp. All bacterial growth was at 37°C. After 2-3 hours growth, 1ml was diluted in 5mls of prewarmed TY/Glu/Amp and infected by addition of 0.5 ml of a 200 fold concentrate of the M13K07gIII  $\Delta$  No.3 preparation described in example 34. After 1 hour of infection the cultures were centrifuged at 4,000 r.p.m. for 10 minutes, resuspended in 2xTY, 100 $\mu$ g/ml ampicillin, incubated for a further hour, transferred to 500  $\mu$ l of 2xTY medium containing 100  $\mu$ g/ml ampicillin, 50  $\mu$ g/ml kanamycin and grown for 16 hours. The remaining steps of phage preparation were as described in example 44. Phage were finally dissolved in 10mM Tris, 1mM EDTA pH7.4 at 1/100th the original culture volume.

#### Affinity purification

10mls of turkey egg lysozyme at a concentration of 10mg/ml in 0.1M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, 0.5MNaCl pH8.3 was mixed with an equal volume of swollen Cyanogen Bromide Activated Sepharose 4B (Pharmacia), covalently linked and washed according to manufacturers instructions. Before use this matrix (TEL-Sepharose) was washed with 100 volumes of PBS followed by 10 volumes of PBSM. The TEL-Sepharose was resuspended in an equal volume of PBSM and 1ml was added to 1ml of a 50 fold concentrate of phage in PBSM and incubated on a rotating platform for 30 minutes at room temperature. The actual phage used for this step was prepared by mixing equal volumes of the independent preparations of the three randomised pools (D1.3L9192, D1.3H101 and D1.3L32). After this binding step, the suspensions were loaded onto a disposable polypropylene column (Poly-Prep columns, Bio-Rad) and washed with 200 volumes of PBS containing 0.1% Tween 20. Bound phage were eluted with 1ml of 100mM triethylamine and neutralised with 0.5ml 1M Tris (pH7.4). A dilution series was prepared from the eluate and used to infect TGI cells and plated out on TY plates containing 100 $\mu$ g/ml ampicillin, 2% glucose. Plates carrying approximately 10<sup>5</sup> colonies were scraped into 3mls of 2xTY, 20% glycerol.

129

and stored at -70°C. 10µl of this was used to initiate a second round culture which was rescued with M13K07gIIIΔ No.3 as described above (using a final culture volume of 100ml). Second and third round affinity column purification steps were carried out as described above for the first round.

#### Analysis by ELISA

40 colonies derived from the third round of column purification on TEL-Sepharose were picked into a 96 well plate and grown overnight at 37°C in 200µl of TY/Amp/Glu. Phagemid particles were rescued and prepared for ELISA as described in example 18. ELISA plates were coated overnight at 37°C with hen egg lysozyme (HEL) or turkey egg lysozyme (TEL) at a concentration of 200µg/ml in 50mM NaHCO<sub>3</sub> pH9.6. ELISAs were carried out as described in example 18.

After 15 minutes incubation in substrate, 13 clones were found to be negative (OD<0.05 on HEL and TEL). In all positives, a signal of 0.1-0.78 was scored on HEL with the exception of one where signal on HEL was 0.078 but signal on TEL (OD 0.169) brought it in to the positive group. The control phagemid preparation had a percentage ratio of signal TEL:HEL of 22%. Clones were deemed to have an unaltered binding if the ratio of TEL:HEL was less than 40%. 9 clones fell into this category. 18 samples were scored as having altered binding with a ratio of signal on TEL:HEL of between 40-200%.

A dilution series was made on 10 clones which were analysed by ELISA in 6 of these clones the profile of binding to HEL was the same as the original clone (PCAT33CFvD1.3) while the signal with TEL was increased (see figure 50 clone B1). In the remaining 4 clones, the increased signal with TEL was accompanied by a decrease in signal on HEL (see figure 50 clone A4).

#### Competition with soluble antigen

All of the isolated clones retained binding to HEL to varying extents. In order to determine whether a soluble antigen could compete with the immobilised antigen, a parallel experiment was carried out, as above, but with the addition of hen egg lysozyme (100µg/ml) to TEL-Sepharose before incubating with the phage preparation. This experiment was carried through 3 rounds of column purification and 40 colonies were picked. None of these clones bound HEL or GEL demonstrating that the soluble antigen had been successful in competing out binding to the immobilised antigen.

#### Example 46

Modification of the specificity of an antibody by replacement of the VLK domain by a VLK library derived from an Unimmunised Mouse

130

When an antibody specificity is isolated it will often be desirable to alter some of its properties particularly its affinity or specificity. This example demonstrates that the specificity of an antibody can be altered by use of a different VL domain derived from a repertoire of such domains. This method using display on phage would be applicable to improvement of existing monoclonal antibodies as well as antibody specificities derived using phage antibodies. This example shows that replacement of the VL domain of scFvD1.3 specific for Hen eggwhite lysozyme (HEL) with a library of VL domains allows selection of scFv fragments with bind also to Turkey eggwhite lysozyme (TEL). More generally this experimental approach shows that specificities of antibodies can be modified by replacement of a variable domain and gives a further example of the hierarchical approach to isolating antibody specificities.

The D1.3 heavy chain was amplified from an existing construct (pSV1-VHD1.3, Ward et al., 1989 supra) by PCR using the primers VHIBACK and VHIFOR, the light chain library was amplified from a cDNA library derived from the spleen of an unimmunised mouse, which was synthesized by using the MUKTONK primers 1,2,4,5 for the first strand as in example 14. The subsequent amplification was performed with the same forward primers and the VK2BACK primer. The PCR assembly of the D1.3 heavy chain with the light chain library was mediated by the signal chain IV linker as described in example 14.

Cloning the assembled PCR products (scFv sequences) was done after an additional PCR step (pull-through) using a BACK primer providing an ApalI site and forward primers which contained a Not I site as described in example 14. ApalI/Not I digested PCR fragments were cloned into the similarly digested vector fCAT2 as in example 11. 5x10<sup>5</sup> transformations were obtained after electroporation of the ligation reaction into MC1061 cells.

Screening of the phage library for TEL binders was performed by panning. Polystyrene Falcon 2058 tubes were coated (16 hrs) with 2 ml of TEL-PBS (3 µg/ml) and blocked for 2 hrs with 4 ml PBS (PBS containing 2% skimmed milk powder). Phage derived from the library (5x10<sup>10</sup> transducing units) in 2 ml of PBS (2%) were incubated in these tubes for 2 hrs at room temperature. The tubes were washed 3x with PBS, 1x with 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5, 0.5 M NaCl, 1x with 50mM Tris-HCl, pH8.5, 0.5 M NaCl, 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 9.5 M NaCl. Finally phage were eluted with 100 mM triethylamine. Eluted phages were taken to infect TGI cells, the cells were plated on 2xTY plates containing 15 µg/ml tetracycline and grown for 16h. The colonies were scraped into 25ml of 2TY medium and the phages were recovered by PBS

precipitation. After a second round of selection for TEL binders ELISAs were performed as described (example 2).

Analysis of 100 clones from the library before affinity selection by ELISA on plates coated with TEL showed no binders. In contrast, after two rounds of selection for TEL binding phages about 10% of the phage clones showed positive ELISA signals. ELISA signals were scored positive with values at least two fold higher than the fdCA72 vector without insert. A more detailed analysis of binding properties of TEL binding phages is shown in figure 51.

As shown in figure 51, several clones were found which bind equally to TEL and HEL in contrast to the original D1.3 scFv, which binds almost exclusively to HEL. None of the clones bound to BSA. These findings indicate that the specificity of these scFvs was broader in comparison to D1.3, since both lysozymes (HEL and TEL) are recognized, but specificity for lysozyme was retained since other BSA was not recognized. The deduced amino acid sequences (derived by DNA sequencing) of two light chains from clones MF1 and M21, which correspond to clones 3 and 9 in figure 51 are shown in figure 52.

In the case of isolated antibodies the experimental approach as described in this study may be particularly useful if recognition of a wider range of different but closely related antigens is desired. For example, monoclonal antibodies against viral antigens viral antigens like V3 loop of HIV-1 gp120 are in most cases quite specific for one particular virus isolate because of the variability in this part of the HIV-1 env gene. The modification of such antibodies in the way described in this example may lead to antibodies which cross react with a wider range of HIV-1 isolates, and would therefore be of potentially higher therapeutic or diagnostic value.

A similar approach could be taken in which a light chain variable domain of desired properties is kept fixed and combined with a library of heavy chain variable domains. Some heavy chains, for example VHD1.3 retain binding activity as single domains. This may allow a strategy where VH domains are screened for binding activity when expressed on phage and then binding domains combined with a library of VL domains for selection of suitable light chain partners.

Example 47  
Selection of a Phage Antibody Specificity by Binding to an Antigen attached to Magnetic Beads. Use of a Cleavable Reagent to allow elution of Bound Phage under Mild Conditions

When a phage antibody binds to its antigen with high affinity or avidity it may not be possible to elute the phage antibody from an affinity matrix with a molecule

related to the antigen. Alternatively, there may be no suitable specific eluting molecule that can be prepared in sufficiently high concentration. In these cases it is necessary to use an elution method which is not specific to the antigen-antibody complex. Unfortunately, some of the non-specific elution methods disrupt phage structure, for instance phage viability is reduced with time at pH12 (Roscamando, S.F. and Zinder, N.D. J. Mol. Biol. 36 387-399 1968). A method was therefore devised which allows elution of bound phage antibodies under mild conditions (reduction of a dithiol group with dithiothreitol) which do not disrupt phage structure.

Target antigen was biotinylated using a cleavable biotinylation reagent. BSA conjugated with 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone (O. Makela et al. supra) was modified using a biotinylation reagent with a cleavable dithiol group (sulphosuccinimidyl 2-(biotinamido) ethyl-1,3-dithiopropionate from Pierce) according to the manufacturers instructions. This biotinylated antigen was bound to streptavidin coated magnetic beads and the complex used to bind phage. Streptavidin coated magnetic beads (Dyna1) were precoated with antigen by mixing 690µg of biotinylated OX-BSA in 1 ml PBS, with 200µl of beads for at least 1 hour at room temperature. Free antigen was removed by washing in PBS. One fortieth of the complex (equivalent to 5µl of beads and an input of 17.5 µg of OX-BSA) was added to 0.5ml of phage in PBSM (PBS containing 2% skimmed milk powder) containing 1.9x10<sup>10</sup> phage particles mixed at the ratios of pAB1.3 directed against lysozyme (example 2) to pABNq11 directed against 2-phenyl-5-oxazolone (example 11) shown in Table 12.

After 1 hour of incubation with mixing at room temperature, magnetic beads were recovered using a Dynal MPC-E magnetic separation device. They were then washed in PBS containing 0.5% Tween 20, (3x10 minutes, 2x1 hour, 2x 10 minutes) and phage eluted by 5 minutes incubation in 50µl PBS containing 10mM dithiothreitol. The eluate was used to infect TGI cells and the resulting colonies probed with the oligo Nq11CDR3 (5' AAACAGGCCCGGTAATCATGCC 3') derived from CDR3 of the Nq11 antibody (This hybridises to pABNq11 but not pAB D1.3).

A 670 fold enrichment of pABNq11 (table 12) was achieved from a background of pABD1.3 in a single round of purification using the equivalent of 17.5µg of biotinylated OX-BSA.

This elution procedure is just one example of an elution procedure under mild conditions. A particularly advantageous method would be to introduce a nucleotide sequence encoding amino acids constituting a recognition site for cleavage by a highly specific protease between the foreign gene inserted, in this instance a gene for an

antibody fragment, and the sequence of the remainder of gene III. Examples of such highly specific proteases are Factor X and thrombin. After binding of the phage to an affinity matrix and elution to remove non-specific binding phage and weak binding phage, the strongly bound phage would be removed by washing the column with protease under conditions suitable for digestion at the cleavage site. This would cleave the antibody fragment from the phage particle eluting the phage. These phage would be expected to be infective since the only protease site should be the one specifically introduced. Strongly binding phage could then be recovered by infecting e.g. E.coli T61 cells.

#### Example 48

Use of Cell Selection to provide an Enriched Pool of Antigen Specific Antibody Genes, Application to reducing the Complexity of Repertoires of Antibody Fragment Displayed on the Surface of Bacteriophage

There are approximately  $10^{16}$  different combinations of heavy and light chains derived from the spleen of an immunised mouse. If the random combinatorial approach is used to clone heavy and light chain fragments into a single vector to display scFv, Fv or Fab fragments on phage, it is not a practical proposition to display all  $10^{16}$  combinations. One approach, described in this example, to reducing the complexity is to clone genes only from antigen selected cells. (An alternative approach, which copes with the complexity is the dual combinatorial library described in example 26).

The immune system uses the binding of antigen by surface immunoglobulin to select the population of cells that respond to produce specific antibody. This approach of selecting antigen binding cells has been investigated to reduce the number of combinatorial possibilities and so increase the chance of recovering the original combination of heavy and light chains.

The immunological response to the hapten 4-hydroxy-3-nitrophenylacetic acid (NP) has been extensively studied. Since the primary immune response to NP uses only a single light chain the applicants were able to examine the use of the combinatorial method using a fixed light chain and a library of heavy chains to examine the frequencies genes that code for antibodies binding to NP (4-hydroxy-3-iodo-5-nitrophenylacetic acid). The applicants have thus used this system to investigate the merits of selecting cell populations prior to making combinatorial libraries for display on phage.

#### Methods

2.1 Hapten conjugates  
Chick gamma globulin (CGG, Sigma, Poole, UK) and Bovine serum albumen (BSA, Boehringer, Mannheim, Germany) were conjugated with NP-O-succinimide or NIP-caproate-O-

succinimide (Cambridge Research Biochemicals, Northwich, UK) based on the method described by Brownstone, A., Brownstone, A., Mitchell, M.A. and Pitt-Rivers, R., Immunology 1966, 10: 465-492). The activated compounds were dissolved in dimethylformamide and added to proteins in 0.2 M sodium hydrogen carbonate. They were mixed with constant agitation for 16 hours at 4°C and then dialysed against several changes of 0.2 M sodium hydrogen carbonate. They were finally dialysed into phosphate buffered saline (PBS). The conjugates made were NP12CGG, NIP10BSA. The NIP10BSA derivative was subsequently biotinylated using a biotinylation kit purchased from Amersham (Amersham International, Amersham, UK).

#### 2.2 Animals and immunisation

Mice of the strain C57BL/6 were immunised by intraperitoneal injection of 100µg NP-CGG in Complete Freund's Adjuvant at 10 weeks of age.

#### 2.3 Spleen preparation

Seven days after immunization cells from the spleen were prepared as described by Galfré and Milstein (Galfré, G. and Milstein, C. Methods Enzymol. 1981, 73:3-46). Red cells were lysed with ammonium chloride (Boyle, W. Transplantation 1968, 6:71) and when cell selection was performed dead cells were removed by the method described by von Boehmer and Shortman (von Boehmer, H. and Shortman, K. J. Immunol. Methods 1973, 11:273). The cells were suspended in phosphate buffered saline (PBS), 1% bovine serum albumen, 0.01% sodium azide; throughout all cell selection procedures the cells were kept at 4°C in this medium.

#### 2.4 Cell selection

Biotinylated NIP-BSA was coupled to streptavidin coupled magnetic beads (Dynabeads M280 streptavidin, Dynal, Oslo, Norway) by incubating 10<sup>8</sup> beads with 100µg of biotinylated protein for 1 hour, with occasional agitation, and then washing five times to remove unbound antigen. The coupled beads were stored at 4°C in medium until required. For selection of antigen binding cells the cells (2-4x10<sup>7</sup>/ml) were first incubated for 30 minutes with uncoupled beads, at a bead: cell ratio of 1:1, to examine the degree of non-specific binding. The beads were then separated by placing the tube in a magnetic device (MPC-8 Dynal) for 3-5 minutes. The unbound cells were removed and then incubated with NIP-BSA coupled magnetic beads, at a bead:cell ratio of 0.1:1, for 60 minutes, with occasional agitation. The beads and resorted cells were separated as described above. The beads were then resuspended in 1 ml of medium and the separation repeated; this process was repeated 5-7 times until no unbound cells could be detected when counted on a haemocytometer.

For the depletion of surface immunoglobulin positive

cells the cells were incubated with 20µg biotinylated goat anti-mouse polyvalent immunoglobulin (Sigma, Poole, UK). The cells were then washed twice with medium and added to streptavidin coupled magnetic beads at a bead to cell ratio of 30:1. After 30 minutes incubation the beads and resuspended cells were separated by applying the magnetic device three times - taking the supernatant each time.

**2.4 DNA/cDNA preparation, PCR amplification and cloning**  
DNA was prepared by a simple proteinase-K digest method that was particularly convenient for small numbers of cells (PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications, Ed Innis M.A., Gelfand D. H., Sninsky J.J. and White T. J. Academic Press). RNA preparation and subsequent cDNA synthesis was performed as described by Gherardi et al (Gherardi E., Pannell R. and Milstein C. J. Immunol. Methods, 1990. 126:61-68). PCR and cloning of the heavy chain libraries was performed using the primers and conditions described by Ward et al (Ward, E.S., Gussow, D., Griffiths, A.D., Jones, P.T. and Winter, G., Nature, 1989. 341: 544-546); 40 cycles of PCR amplification were performed. The VH and Fv expression vectors used were adapted from those previously described by Ward et al. They were both subcloned into pUC19 (Vaira and Messing see later) and the Fv expression vector was modified to include a germline lambda-1 light chain (obtained as a gift from T. Simon (originally cloned by Siegfried Weiss, Basel Institute of Immunology)). The vector is shown in Figure 53.

#### 2.5 Expression and ELISA

For screening single colonies were picked into individual wells of microtitre plates (Bibby) in 200µl 2 x TY/ampicillin 100µg/ml/0.1% glucose and then incubated at 37°C for 5-6 hours with agitation. Isopropyl-β-D-thiogalactopyranoside (IPTG, Sigma, Poole, UK) was then added to a final concentration of 1 mM and the incubation continued for a further 16 hours at 30°C before harvesting the supernatants. The wells of Falcon ELISA plates (Becton Dickinson, N.J., USA) were coated overnight at room temperature with NIP10-BSA (40µg/ml in PBS) and then blocked with 2% skimmed milk powder in PBS for 2 hours at room temperature. The bacterial supernatants were added and incubated at room temperature for 1 hour and then the plates were washed three times with PBS. Peroxidase conjugated goat anti-mouse lambda-chain (Southern Biotechnology, Birmingham, USA) was added and again incubated for 1 hour at room temperature before washing six times with PBS and then developing with 2,2'-Azino-bis (3-ethylbenzthiazoline-6-sulfonic acid) (Sigma, Poole, UK) as the peroxidase substrate. The optical density at 405nm was measured using a ThermoMax

microplate reader (Molecular Devices, Menlo Park, USA) after 30 minutes. Western blotting using the C-terminal myc tag as described in example 27.

#### 3.1 Comparison of RNA/DNA and antigen selected cells

The results of antigen selection are shown in Table 13. Less than 1% of cells bind to NIP-BSA coated beads and the non-specific binding is very low. Assessment of the proportion of expressed genes from each VH library using western blotting showed that full length VH domains were expressed in 95% (19/20) of all clones when RNA was used as the starting material but only 60% (12/20) of clones when DNA (either selected cells or from total spleen) was used as the starting material. This difference probably results from the fact that many rearranged pseudogenes could be amplified with our primers and it appears that there must be some degree of selection, at the level of transcription, for functional genes.

A variable number of clones from each type of library were screened for the production of Fv fragments that bound to NIP. Initial screening ELISAs were performed and positives taken to include those with an optical density of at least twice the background. The initial positives were retransformed and the binding checked in duplicate; it was confirmed that the binding was specific to NIP and not to BSA. The frequency of confirmed positive NIP binding clones for each starting material are shown in Table 14. Using DNA as the starting material for the PCR amplification is approximately equivalent to sampling the cells present as there is only one functional re-arranged heavy chain gene and at most one re-arranged pseudogene per B-cell. Amplifying from the RNA of an animal of course biases the repertoire to the reacting B-cells and in a recently immunised animal this would be expected to give some bias towards the immunogen. The data in Table 14 clearly shows how powerful this selection is with the number of antigen specific genes being enriched at least 96 fold when RNA made one week after primary immunisation is used as the starting material. The data also show that selection for antigen binding cells also provides an alternative powerful method of selection for the required genetic starting material.

#### 3.2 Comparison of Total Spleen/surface immunoglobulin depleted Spleen

To examine the cellular basis of the selection achieved by using RNA as the starting material we depleted the spleen of surface immunoglobulin positive cells using biotinylated anti-polyvalent immunoglobulin and streptavidin conjugated magnetic beads. Prior FACS analysis had demonstrated that this method removed over 96% of surface immunoglobulin positive cells. RNA was

prepared from both surface immunoglobulin depleted and non-depleted fractions of a spleen and VH libraries made from each. The ELISA results (Table 14) show that the number of positives is certainly not decreased by this depletion suggesting that the major portion of the selective effect of using RNA may come from surface immunoglobulin negative G-cells (probably plasma cells).

#### Conclusions

The applicants have demonstrated the importance of the amplification of specific RNA produced by immunisation to enable binding activity to be obtained with any reasonable frequency from a combinatorial library. The applicants have also demonstrated an alternative strategy which mimics that of the immune system itself. Using a simple method of selecting for antigen binding cells gave comparable enrichment and has the added advantage of using a broader range of genes. At first sight the random combinatorial approach would appear unlikely to produce the original combination of heavy and light chain because of the vast diversity of the immunoglobulin genes. The applicants show here, however, that following immunisation, with a good antigen, 10% of the VH genes from total splenic RNA isolated come from antigen specific cells so the effective size of the repertoire is greatly reduced. This together with the fact that promiscuity of the heavy and light chains occurs (examples 21 and 22) accounts for the fact that combinatorial system does produce antigen binding clones with reasonable frequency. The data also suggests that the bulk of the antigen specific RNA comes from surface immunoglobulin negative cells which are most likely plasma cells.

The data also show that this simple method of antigen selection may be useful in reducing the complexity of the combinatorial library. In this case an enrichment of antigen specific genes of at least 56 fold has been achieved which in the normal case where heavy and light chains are unknown would result in a reduction of the complexity of the combinatorial library by a factor of over 3000. A further advantage of using antigen selected cells (and amplifying from DNA to reduce any bias due to the state of the cell) is that this results in a broader range of antibody genes amplified. It may be that a simple cell selection such as that the applicants have described here in combination with phage selection would be ideal. From this example it can be seen that by combining cell and phage selection methods one could reasonably expect to screen all the combinations of heavy and light chain (approximately  $4 \times 10^6$ ) and would thus be able to screen all binding combinations although this would not, at present, be possible from whole spleen (approximately  $4 \times 10^6$  combinations, assuming 50% B-cells).

Table 1. Enrichment of pAb (D1.3) from vector population

INPUT RATIO <sup>a</sup>	OUTPUT RATIO		ENRICHMENT <sup>d</sup>
	oligo <sup>b</sup>	ELISA <sup>c</sup>	
pAb:fd-CAT1	pAb:total phage	pAb:total phage	
Single Round			
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	43/124		1.3x10 <sup>6</sup>
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	2/82		1.0x10 <sup>6</sup>
Two Rounds			
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	197/372		2.1x10 <sup>6</sup>
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	90/356	3/24	1.0x10 <sup>6</sup>
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	27/183	5/26	5.9x10 <sup>6</sup>
1:4x10 <sup>6</sup>	13/278		1.8x10 <sup>6</sup>

Footnotes: <sup>a</sup>Approximately 10<sup>12</sup> phage with the stated ratio of pAb (D1.3) : FDTEs/Bs were applied to 1 ml lysozyme-sepharose columns, washed and eluted. <sup>b</sup>TG1 cells were infected with the eluted specific binding phage and plated onto TY-tet plates. After overnight incubation at 30-37°C, the plates were analysed by hybridisation to the 32p, labelled oligonucleotide VH10R (Ward et al op cit) which is specific to pAb D1.3. <sup>c</sup>Single colonies from overnight plates were grown, phage purified, and tested for lysozyme binding. <sup>d</sup>Enrichment was calculated from the oligonucleotide probing data.



Table 2 Enrichment of pAb (DI.3) from mixed pAb population

Input Ratio <sup>1</sup> (pAbDI.3:pAbNQ11)	Output Ratio <sup>2</sup> (pAb DI.3:Total phage)	Enrichment
Single Round		
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	18/460	0.98 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	3/770	0.97 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	0/112	-
pAb NQ11 only	0/460	-
Second Round		
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	119/170	1.75 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	101/130	1.95 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	102/204	1.26 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	0/274	-
1 : 2.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	0/209	-
pAb NQ11 only	0/170	-

## Notes

1. 10<sup>10</sup> phage applied to a lysosome column as in table 1.
2. Plating of cells and probing with oligonucleotide as in table 1, except the oligonucleotide was DI.3CDR3A.

Table 3: Enzyme activity of phage-enzyme

Input	ng of enzyme or No. of phage	Rate (OD/hr)	No. of molecules of Enzyme equivalent (x10 <sup>-11</sup> )
Pure Enzyme	335	34	24.5
Pure Enzyme	177.5	17.4	12.25
Pure Enzyme	88.7	8.7	6.125
Pure Enzyme	44.4	4.12	3.06
Pure Enzyme	22.2	1.8	1.5
Pure Enzyme	11.1	0.86	0.76
No Enzyme	0	0.005	0
fd-phoA1166/TG1	1.83x10 <sup>11</sup>	5.82	4.2
fd-CAT2/TG1	1.0x10 <sup>11</sup>	0.155	0.112
fd-phoA1166/KS272	7.1x10 <sup>10</sup>	10.32	7.35
fd-CAT2/KS272	8.2x10 <sup>11</sup>	0.038	0.027

(Times Publishing Co. Inc.)

Third round	Pre-collision	After first round	After second round	After
-------------	---------------	-------------------	--------------------	-------

A	B	C
Random (nonbacterial) libraries	phx-immunised mice	Mixture of clones
0/568 (0%)	48/376 (13%)	88/1896 (4.6%)
175/188 (93%)	-	14/1740 (2.5%) <sup>†</sup>
0/388 (0%)	-	1152/1156 (99.7%)
-	-	1296/1299 (99.8%)

\* In panel C, numbers refer to VH-B/VK-J cytokines.

Numbers after three recollections and cycles of growth. This control (including the chromium steps, controls that a spontaneous growth in infectivity substage was not responsible for the decline in phase VII-IV-K-1).

intensity and duration was not responsible for the variation in K<sub>1</sub>-D.

442

[illegible]

(+)-activity of pHOX-USA EJISA results of phage and phagemid constructions. Phage were considered to be "blinding" if OD<sub>495</sub> of sample was at least 10 fold greater than background in EJISA; † E.coli T11 was used for the growth of the phage unless the use of E.coli 11B2151 is specifically indicated; ‡ Information obtained from genetic surveillance and in accordance with blinding date; § Result confirmed experimentally by Western blot (Fig 14b, see Figure 29.

Soluble enzyme  
(Data from Chaidaroglou et al. 1988)

Phage enzyme  
(Data from this study)

	<u>phoArg166</u>	<u>phoAla166</u>	<u>phoArg166</u>	<u>phoAla166</u>
$K_m$ ( $\mu M$ )	12.7	1620	73	1070
Relative $K_m$	1	127	1	14.6
Relative $k_{cat}$	1	0.397	1	0.360
Relative $k_{cat}/K_m$	1	0.0032	1	0.024

Table 6. Kinetic parameters of soluble and phage-bound alkaline phosphatase. Relative values of  $k_{cat}$  and  $K_m$  for the soluble enzyme and for the phage enzyme were derived by comparing with the values for wild type enzyme (phoArg166) and the phage-wild type enzyme (fdphoArg166).

### Enzyme Activity of Phage Samples

SAMPLE (Construct: host)	INPUT PHAGE PARTICLE (pmol)	RATE (pmol substrate converted/min)	SPECIFIC ACTIVITY (mol substrate converted/mol phage/min)
fdphoArg166 :TG1	2.3	8695	3700
fdphoAla166 :TG1	5.6	2111	380
fdphoAla166 :KS272	1.8	2505	1400
fdCAT2: TG1	3.3	<1	<0.3
fdCAT2: KS272	5.6	70	12

Table 7

Table 8. Affinity chromatography of phage-enzymes

SAMPLE	INFECTIVITY (Percentage of phage particles which are infectious )	INPUT PHAGE PARTICLE (x10 <sup>9</sup> )	OUTPUT PHAGE PARTICLE (x10 <sup>9</sup> )
fdphoArg166	0.37%	5160	30
fdphoAla166	0.26%	3040	90
fdCAT2	4.75%	4000	2

Nucleotide mutation (base position)

308	Ala->Val (VH FR3)	3
703	Tyr->Asp (VL CDR3)	1
706	Ser-> Gly (VL CDR3)	1
724	Gly-> Ser (VL FR4)	21
725	Gly-> Asp (VL FR4)	3
734	Thr-> Ile (VL FR4)	1

Table 9 Mutations in scFvB18 selected by display on phage following growth in mutator strains

Table 10 (li<sup>2</sup>)

HuIgG1-4CIII FOR 5'-GTC CAC CTT GGT GTT GCT GGG CTT-3'  
 HuIgM FOR 5'-TGG ANG AGG CAC GTT CTT TTC TTT-3'

Human V<sub>k</sub> Back Primers

HuV<sub>k</sub>1a BACK 5'-GAC ATC CAG ATG ACC CAG TCT CC-3'  
 HuV<sub>k</sub>2a BACK 5'-GAT GTT GTG ATG ACT CAG TCT CC-3'  
 HuV<sub>k</sub>3a BACK 5'-GAA ATT GTG TTG ACG CAG TCT CC-3'  
 HuV<sub>k</sub>4a BACK 5'-GAC ATC GTG ATG ACC CAG TCT CC-3'  
 HuV<sub>k</sub>5a BACK 5'-GAA ACG ACA CTC ACG CAG TCT CC-3'  
 HuV<sub>k</sub>6a BACK 5'-GAA ATT GTG CTG ACT CAG TCT CC-3'

Human J<sub>k</sub> Forward Primers

HuJ<sub>k</sub>1 FOR 5'-ACG TTT GAT TTC CAC CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>2 FOR 5'-ACG TTT GAT CTC CAG CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>3 FOR 5'-ACG TTT GAT ATC CAC TTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>4 FOR 5'-ACG TTT GAT CTC CAC CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>5 FOR 5'-ACG TTT AAT CTC CAG TGT TGT CCC-3'

HuJ<sub>k</sub>1 BACK Not 5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT GAT TTC CAC CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>2 BACK Not 5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT GAT CTC CAG CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>3 BACK Not 5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT GAT ATC CAC TTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>4 BACK Not 5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT GAT CTC CAC CTT GGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>k</sub>5 BACK Not 5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACG TTT AAT CTC CAG TGT TGT CCC-3'

Human  $\kappa$  Constant Region Primers

Table 10(i) Oligonucleotide primers used for PCR of human immunoglobulin genes

Oligo Name Sequence

Human V<sub>H</sub> Back Primers

HuV<sub>H</sub>1a BACK 5'-CAG GTG CAG CTG GTG CAG TCT GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>2a BACK 5'-CAG GTC AAC TTA AGG GAG TCT GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>3a BACK 5'-GAG GTG CAG CTG GTG GAG TCT GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>4a BACK 5'-CAG GTG CAG CTG CAG GAG TCG GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>5a BACK 5'-GAG GTG CAG CTG TTG CAG TCT GC-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>6a BACK 5'-CAG GTA CAG CTG CAG CAG TCA GG-3'

HuV<sub>H</sub>1a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC CAG GTG CAG CTG GTG CAG TCT (73-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>2a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC CAG GTC AAC TTA AGG GAG TCT GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>3a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC GAG GTG CAG CTG GTG GAG TCT GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>4a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC CAG GTG CAG CTG CAG GAG TCG GG-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>5a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC CAG GTG CAG CTG TTG CAG TCT GC-3'  
 HuV<sub>H</sub>6a BACKSfi 5'-GTC CTC GCA ACT GGG GGC CAG CCG GGC ATG GGC CAG GTA CAG CTG CAG CAG TCA GG-3'

Human J<sub>H</sub> Forward Primers

HuJ<sub>H</sub>1-2 FOR 5'-TGA GGA GAC GGT GAC CAG GGT GCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>H</sub>3 FOR 5'-TGA AGA GAC GGT GAC CAT TGT CCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>H</sub>4-5 FOR 5'-TGA GGA GAC GGT GAC CAG GGT TCC-3'  
 HuJ<sub>H</sub>6 FOR 5'-TGA GGA GAC GGT GAC CGT GGT CCC-3'

Human Heavy Chain Constant Region Primers

Table 10<sup>a</sup>

HuCAFOR	5'-TGA AGA TTC TGT AGG GGC CAC TGT CTT-3'
HuCAFORNot1	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC TTA TTA TGA ACA TTC TGT AGG GGC CAC TGT CTT-3'
HuCAFORNot2	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC TGC AGA TTC TGT AGG GGC TGT CTT-3'

## Linker oligos

## Reverse JH for scFv linker

RIIuJH1-2	5'-GCA CCC TGG TCA CCG TCT CCT CAG GTG G-3'
RIIuJH3	5'-GGA CAA TGG TCA CCG TCT CTT CAG GTG G-3'
RIIuJH4-5	5'-GAA CCC TGG TCA CCG TCT CCT CAG GTG G-3'
RIIuJH6	5'-GGA CCA CCG TCA CCG TCT CCT CAG GTG C-3'

## Reverse IgG1-4CH11 primer for Fab linker

RIIuIgG1-4CH11FOR	5'-AAG CCC AGC AAC ACC AAG GTG GAC-3'
-------------------	---------------------------------------

## Reverse Vk for scFv linker

RIIuVk1aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC ATC TGG ATG TOC GAT CCG C-3'
RIIuVk2aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGA GTC ATC ACA ACA TOC GAT CCG C-3'
RIIuVk3aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGC GTC AAC ACA ATT TOC GAT CCG C-3'
RIIuVk4aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC ATC ACG ATG TOC GAT CCG C-3'
RIIuVk5aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGC GTG AGT GTC GTT TOC GAT CCG C-3'
RIIuVk6aBACKFv	5'-GGA GAC TGA GTC AGC ACA ATT TOC GAT CCG C-3'

## Reverse Vk for Fab linker

Table 10 ( iii )

HuChkFOR	5'-AGA CTC TCC CTT GTT GAA GCT CTT-3'
HuChkFORNot1	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC TTA TTA TGA ACA TTC TGT AGG GGC CAC TGT CTT-3'
HuChkFORNot2	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC TGC AGA TTC TGT AGG GGC TGT CTT-3'

Human  $\lambda$  Back primers

Hu $\lambda$ 1BACK	5'-CAG TCT GTG TTG ACG CAG CCG CC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 2BACK	5'-CAG TCT GGC CTG ACT CAG CCT GC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 3aBACK	5'-TCC TAT GTG CTG ACT CAG CCA CC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 3bBACK	5'-TCT TCT GAG CTG ACT CAG GAC CC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 4BACK	5'-CAC GTT ATA CTG ACT CAA CCG CC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 5BACK	5'-CAG GCT GTG CTC ACT CAG CCG TC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 6BACK	5'-AAT TTT ATG CTG ACT CAG CCC CA-3'

Human  $\lambda$  Forward Primers

Hu $\lambda$ 1FOR	5'-ACC TAG GAC GGT GAC CTT GGT CCC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 2-3FOR	5'-ACC TAG GAC GGT CAG CTT GGT CCC-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 4-5FOR	5'-ACC TAA AAC GGT GAG CTG GGT CCC-3'

Hu $\lambda$ 1FORNOT	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACC TAG GAC CTT GGT CCG-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 2-3FORNOT	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACC TAG GAC GGT CAG CTT GGT CCG-3'
Hu $\lambda$ 4-5FORNOT	5'-GAG TCA TTC TCG ACT TGC GGC CGC ACC TAG AAC GGT GAG CTG GGT CCG-3'

Human  $\lambda$  Constant Region Primers

Table 11. Deduced protein sequences of heavy and light chains selected from unimmunized library

## Oxazolone binder

HEAVY CHAIN  
VH15.4 CQVLAQSGDAVEIKKQGVTVKCSGDTYTT STGTS WYQAPQQLSDD WIAKAKWTKAQELGQ EVDEITDTGTWYVWELSLASDQTAIVYTCV LLPGSDKTLA YTTDVGKST

LIGHT CHAIN  
VL15.4 IDTVS WYQSLPQAPLITY DKKELGQ QTPKPSGSGSNTANTLATTGATGQSDATTC QTNQK

## BSA Binders

HEAVY CHAIN  
VH15.5 CQVLAQSGDAVEIKKQGVTVKCSGDTYTT STGTS WYQAPQQLSDD WIAKAKWTKAQELGQ EVDEITDTGTWYVWELSLASDQTAIVYTCV LLPGSDKTLA YTTDVGKST

LIGHT CHAIN  
VL15.5 BEELTQDPAVSVALQTVITC QDELSAYTAS WYQSLPQAPLITY DKKELGQ QTPKPSGSGSNTANTLATTGATGQSDATTC KSDKSGKE VYFQD

## Lysozyme binders:

HEAVY CHAIN  
VH10.1 CQVLAQSGDAVEIKKQGVTVKCSGDTYTT STGTS WYQAPQQLSDD WIAKAKWTKAQELGQ EVDEITDTGTWYVWELSLASDQTAIVYTCV LLPGSDKTLA YTTDVGKST

LIGHT CHAIN  
VL10.1 BEELTQDPAVSVALQTVITC QDELSAYTAS WYQSLPQAPLITY DKKELGQ QTPKPSGSGSNTANTLATTGATGQSDATTC KSDKSGKE VYFQD

Table 10

RIHuVκ1aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC ATC TGG ATG TGG GCC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

RIHuVκ2aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC ATC ACA ACA TGG GAC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

RIHuVκ3aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC AAC ACA ATT TGG GAC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

RIHuVκ4aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC ATC ACG ATG TGG GAC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

RIHuVκ5aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC AGT GTC GTT TGG GAC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

RIHuVκ6aBACKFab 5'-GGA GAC TGG GTC AGC ACA ATT TGG GAC ATC (2.7) (2-3)<sup>1</sup>

## Reverse Vλ for svFv linker

RIHuVλBACK1Fv 5'-GCC GGC TGC GTC AAC ACA GAC TGC GAT CCG (1.7) (1.5) CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK2Fv 5'-GCA GGC TGA GTC AGA GCA GAC TGC GAT CCG (1.7) CCG CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK3aFv 5'-GGT GGC TGA GTC AGC ACA TAG GAC GAT CCG (1.7) (1.5) CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK3bFv 5'-GGG TCC TGA GTC AGC TCA GAA GAC GAT CCG (1.7) (1.5) CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK4Fv 5'-GCC GGT TGA GTC AGT ATA ACG TGC GAT CCG (1.7) CCG CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK5Fv 5'-GAC GGC TGA GTC AGC ACA GAC TGC GAT CCG (1.7) CCG CCA GAG-3'

RIHuVλBACK6Fv 5'-TTC GGC TGA GTC AGC ATA AAA TTC GAT CCG (1.7) (1.5) CCA GAG-3'

## Reverse Vλ for Fab linker

RIHuVλBACK1Fab 5'-GCC GGC TGC GTC AAC ACA GAC TGC GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK2Fab 5'-GCA GGC TGA GTC AGA GCA GAC TGC GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK3aFab 5'-GGT GGC TGA GTC AGC ACA TAG GAG GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK3bFab 5'-GGG TCC TGA GTC AGC TCA GAA GAG GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK4Fab 5'-GCC GGT TGA GTC AGT ATA ACG TGG GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK5Fab 5'-GAC GGC TGA GTC AGC ACA GAC TGG GCC ATC (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'

RIHuVλBACK6Fab 5'-TGG GGC TGA GTC AGC ATA AAA TTG GAT CCG (2.7) GGT TGG CCA-3'



Table 12

Enrichment of pABNQ11 from pABD1.3 background by affinity selection using Ox-BSA biotinylated with a cleavable reagent and binding to streptavidin magnetic beads

Input Ratio <sup>1</sup> (pABD1.3:pABNQ11)	Output Ratio <sup>2</sup> (pAB NQ11: Total phage)	Enrichment
2235:1	61/197	690
22350:1	5/202	544

1.  $1.9 \times 10^{10}$  phage in 0.5ml mixed for 1 hour with 5  $\mu$ l streptavidin-magnetic beads precoated with antigen (OX-BSA).

2. Colonies probed with the oligonucleotide NQ11CDR3

Table 13 : Results of antigenic cell selection

	Number of Cells	% of total cells
Total spleen cells	$4 \times 10^7$	
Cells bound to uncoated beads	$0.8 \times 10^4$	0.02
Cells bound to NIP-BSA coated beads	$22 \times 10^4$	0.55

<sup>14</sup> Table : Results of Fv NIP binding ELISAs from selected cell populations:

Cell Population	Positives	*Degree of Enrichment
DNA from total spleen	0/940	
RNA from total Spleen	29/282	> 96
DNA from antigen binding cells	17/282	> 96
Surface Ig Selection		
RNA from Surface Ig negative fraction	8/94	
RNA from total Spleen	4/94	

\* Degree of enrichment compared to total DNA

# CLAIMS

1. A method of producing a multimeric member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises: expressing in a recombinant host organism a first polypeptide chain of said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of that type of sbp member fused to a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which thereby displays said polypeptide at the surface of the package, and expressing in a recombinant host organism a second polypeptide chain of said multimer and causing or allowing the polypeptide chains to come together to form said multimer as part of said rgdp, at least one of said polypeptide chains being expressed from nucleic acid that is capable of being packaged using said component therefor, whereby the genetic material of each said rgdp encodes a said polypeptide chain.
2. A method according to claim 1 wherein both said chains are expressed in the same host organism.
3. A method according to claim 2 wherein said first and second chains of said multimer are expressed as separate chains from a single vector containing their respective nucleic acid.
4. A method according to any one of claims 1, 2 and 3 wherein at least one of said polypeptide chains is expressed from a phage vector.
5. A method according to any one of claims 1 to 4 wherein at least one of said polypeptide chains is expressed from a phagemid vector, the method including using a helper phage, or a plasmid expressing complementing phage genes, to help package said phagemid genome, and said component of the rgdp is a capsid protein therefor.
6. A method according to claim 5 wherein said capsid protein is absent, defective or conditionally defective in the helper phage.
7. A method according to any one of the preceding claims which comprises introducing a vector capable of expressing said first polypeptide chain into a host organism which expresses said second polypeptide chain in free form, or introducing a vector capable of expressing said second polypeptide in free form into a host organism which expresses said first polypeptide chain.
8. A method according to any one the preceding claims wherein each said polypeptide chain is expressed from nucleic acid which is capable of being packaged as a rgdp using said component fusion product, whereby encoding nucleic acid for both said polypeptide chains are packaged in respective rgdps.

9. A method according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the nucleic acid encoding at least one of said first and second polypeptide chains is obtained from a library of nucleic acid including nucleic acid encoding said chain or a population of variants of said chain.

10. A method according to claim 9 wherein both the first and second polypeptide chains are obtained from respective said libraries of nucleic acid.

11. A method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp) from a nucleic acid library including nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of that type of sbp member, which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells polypeptides encoded by said library nucleic acid fused to a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) or in free form for association with a polypeptide component of said sbp member which is expressed as a fusion to said rgdp component, so that the rgdp displays said sbp member in functional form at the surface of the package, said library nucleic acid being contained within the host cells in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component, whereby the genetic material of an rgdp displaying an sbp member contains nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof.

12. A method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of that type of sbp member, wherein the or each said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof is expressed as a fusion with a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component, whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying said sbp member encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof, said host organism being a mutator strain which introduces genetic diversity into the sbp member to produce said mixed population.

13. A method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp), which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of that type of sbp member, wherein the or each said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof is expressed as a fusion with a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member in functional form at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being

contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component, whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying an sbp member encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof, said fusions being with bacteriophage capsid protein and the rgdp being formed with said fusions in the absence of said capsid protein expressed in wild-type form.

14. A method of producing a member of a specific binding pair (sbp) which method comprises:

expressing in recombinant host cells nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a genetically diverse population of that type of sbp member, wherein the or each said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof is expressed as a fusion with a component of a secreted replicable genetic display package (rgdp) which displays said sbp member at the surface of the package, nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being contained within the host cell in a form that is capable of being packaged using said rgdp component, whereby the genetic material of the rgdp displaying an sbp member encodes said sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being expressed from a phageoid or a capsid fusion, and a helper phage, or a plasmid expressing complementing phage genes, is used along with said capsid fusion to package the phageoid nucleic acid.

15. A method according to claim 14, wherein said capsid protein is absent, defective or conditionally defective in the helper phage.

16. A method according to any one of claims 13 to 15 wherein the host cell is a mutator strain which introduces genetic diversity into the sbp member nucleic acid.

17. A method according to any one of claims 9 to 16 wherein said library or genetically diverse population is obtained from:

(i) the repertoire of rearranged immunoglobulin genes of an animal immunised with complementary sbp member,

(ii) the repertoire of rearranged immunoglobulin genes of an animal not immunised with complementary sbp member,

(iii) a repertoire of an artificially rearranged immunoglobulin gene or genes,

(iv) a repertoire of an immunoglobulin homolog gene or genes, or

(v) a mixture of any of (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv).

18. A method according to any one of the preceding claims wherein said sbp member encodes a domain which is, or is homologous to, an immunoglobulin domain.

19. A method according to any one of the preceding claims

wherein the rgdp is a bacteriophage, the host is a bacterium, and said component of the rgdp is a capsid protein for the bacteriophage.

20. A method according to claim 19 wherein the phage is a filamentous phage.

21. A method according to claim 20 wherein the phage is selected from the class I phages fd, M13, f1, f1f1, like, Z3/Z, Ff and the class II phages Xf, Pfl and Pf3.

22. A method according to claim 20 or claim 21 wherein said sbp member or polypeptide chain thereof is expressed as a fusion with the gene III capsid protein of phage fd or its counterpart in another filamentous phage.

23. A method according to claim 22 wherein said sbp member or polypeptide chain thereof is inserted in the N-terminal region of the mature capsid protein downstream of a secretory leader peptide.

24. A method according to any one of claims 19 to 23 wherein the host is *E. coli*.

25. A method according to any one of the preceding claims wherein nucleic acid encoding an sbp member polypeptide is linked downstream to a viral capsid protein through a suppressible translational stop codon.

26. A method according to any one of the preceding claims wherein the rgdps formed by said expression are selected or screened to provide an individual sbp member or a mixed population of said sbp members associated in their respective rgdps with nucleic acid encoding said sbp member or a polypeptide chain thereof.

27. A method according to claim 26 wherein the rgdps are selected by affinity with a member complementary to said sbp member.

28. A method according to claim 27 which comprises recovering any rgdps bound to said second member by washing with an eluent.

29. A method according to claim 28 wherein the eluent contains a molecule which competes with said rgdp for binding to the complementary sbp member.

30. A method according to any one of the claims 27 to 29 wherein the rgdp is applied to said complementary sbp member in the presence of a molecule which competes with said package for binding to said complementary sbp member.

31. A method according to any one of claims 26 to 30, wherein nucleic acid derived from a selected or screened rgdp is used to express said sbp member or a fragment or

derivative thereof in a recombinant host organism.

32. A method according to claim 31 wherein nucleic acid from one or more rgdps is taken and used to provide encoding nucleic acid in a further said method to obtain an individual sbp member or a mixed population of sbp members, or encoding nucleic acid thereof.

33. A method according to claim 31 or claim 32 wherein the expression and product is modified to produce a derivative thereof.

34. A method according to any one of claims 31, 32 and 33 wherein the expression and product or derivative thereof is used to prepare a therapeutic or prophylactic medicament or a diagnostic product.

35. Recombinant host cells harbouring a library of nucleic acid fragments comprising fragments encoding a genetically diverse population of a type of member of a specific binding pair (sbp), each sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof being expressed as a fusion with a component of a secretible replicable genetic display package (rgdp), so that said sbp members are displayed on surface of the rgdps in functional form and the genetic material of the rgdps encodes the associated sbp member or a polypeptide component thereof.

36. Recombinant host cells according to claim 35, wherein said type of sbp member are immunoglobulins or immunoglobulin homologs, a first polypeptide chain of which is expressed as a said fusion with a component of the rgdp and a second polypeptide chain of which is expressed in free form and associates with the fused first polypeptide chain in the rgdp.

37. A helper phage whose genome lacks nucleic acid encoding one of its capsid proteins, or whose encoding nucleic acid therefor is conditionally defective, or which encodes said capsid protein in defective or conditionally defective form.

38. A bacterial host cell containing a filamentous phage genome defective for a capsid protein thereof and wherein the host cell is capable of expressing capsid protein complementing said defect such that infectious phage particles can be obtained therefrom.

39. A bacterial host cell according to claim 38 wherein said complementing capsid protein is expressed in said host from another vector contained therein.

40. A bacterial host cell according to claim 38 or claim 39 wherein the defective capsid protein is gene III of phage fd or its counterpart in another filamentous phage.

246

Fig. 2(i)

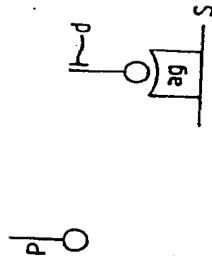
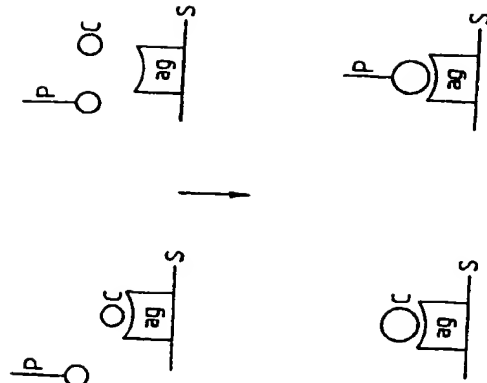


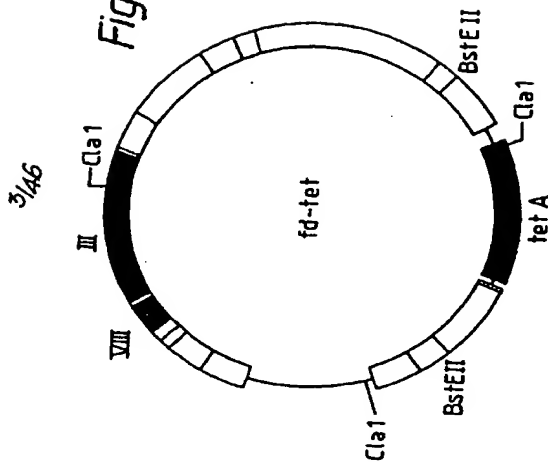
Fig. 2(iii)



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Fig. 3.



fd-tet  
 ↓  
 cleave with BstEII  
 fill in with Klenow  
 re-ligate  
 ↓  
 FDT6Bst  
 ↓  
 in vitro mutagenesis (oligo 1)  
 ↓  
 FDT6Bs  
 ↓  
 in vitro mutagenesis (oligo 2)  
 ↓  
 FDT6s/Xh

5/46

Fig. 5.

10 20 30 40 50 60  
GCTGCAATTCATTTTCAGGAGGACATCATATATACCTATTTCCTACGCGAGCC  
rbs M K Y L L P T A A  
70 80 90 100 110 120  
A G L L L L A A O P A M A Q V Q L Q E S  
PalB leader  
GCTGATTTGTTTACTTCTCTCCCAACGAGTGGCCAGTTCAGCTGAGGATCA  
SphI  
130 140 150 160 170 180  
G P G L V A P S Q S L B I T C T V S G P  
GAGCTGAGCTGCTGGGCGCTCAGCTCAGCTGCTGCTCAGCTCAGCTCAGCTC  
PstI  
190 200 210 220 230 240  
S L T G Y G V N W V R Q P P G K G L E W  
TCAATTAAGCTGATGCTGATTAAGCTGATGCTGATGCTGATGCTGATGCTG  
VBD1.3  
250 260 270 280 290 300  
L G M I W G D G N T D Y N B A L K S R L  
CTGGGATATTTGGGTTATGGAACACAGCTATATTTTCACTCTCAATTCAGCTG  
310 320 330 340 350 360  
S I S K D N B K S Q V P L K M N S L H T  
AGCATCAGCAAGCACTCCAGAGCTCAAGCTTTTCTTAAATATGATGCTGCACT  
370 380 390 400 410 420  
D D T A R Y Y C A R E R D Y R L D Y W Q  
CATGACAGCAAGCACTCCAGCTGATGCTGATGCTGATGCTGATGCTGATGCTG  
430 440 450 460 470 480  
Q G T T V T V S B G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G  
Linker Peptide  
490 500 510 520 530 540  
G G G S D I E L T Q S P A S L B A S V G  
gggggggagtcgacatcagagctgagctgagctgagctgagctgagctgagctgag  
SacI

4/46

1650) GAA ACT GTT GAA AGT  
V T V S S  
Q V Q L Q  
B TCT CAC TCC GCT CAG GTC CAA CTG CAG AAG CTT ACG GTC ACC GTC TCA ACT GTT GAA AGT  
PstI  
Q V Q L Q  
L E I K R  
C TCT CAC TCC GCT CAG GTC CAA CTG CAG GTC CAG AAG CTT ACG GTC ACC GTC TCA ACT GTT GAA AGT  
XhoI  
PstI  
A TCT CAC TCC GCT  
SIGNAL  
CLEAVAGE SITE  
GENE III  
Oligo 1 (1653) ACA ACT TTC AAC AGT TGA GGA GAC GGT GAC CGT AAG CTT CTG CAG TTG GAC CTG AGC  
GGA GTG AGA ATA (1620)  
Oligo 2 (1653) ACA ACT TTC AAC AGT TTC CCG TTT GAT CTC GAG CTC CTG CAG TTG GAC CTG  
(1704) GTC GTC TTT CCA GAC GTT AGT  
Oligo 3 (1704) GTC GTC TTT CCA GAC GTT AGT

Fig. 4.2

Fig. 4.1

646

Fig.5 cont.

E T V T I T C R A S G N I H N Y L A W Y  
GAACTGTCAACCTCAATGTCAGCAAGTGGGATATTCACCAATTTATTTAGCATGCTAT  
550 560 570 580 590 600

Q Q K Q G K S P Q L L V Y Y T T T L A D  
CAGCAGAAACAGGAGAAATCTCTCAGCTCTCTCTATTTATTCACCACTTACAGAT  
610 620 630 640 650 660

G V P S R F S G S G S G T Q Y S L K I N  
GGTGTCCCTCAAGGTTCTCAGTGGCGATGGATCAGGACACCAATTTCTCTCAAGTCAAC  
670 680 690 700 710 720

S L Q P E D P G S Y C Q H F W S T P R  
AGCTTCGAGTGGAGGATTTTGGAGTTTACTGTCAACATTTTGGAGTACTCTCGG  
730 740 750 760 770 780

T F G G T K L E I K R E Q K L I S E E  
ACGTTGCTGGAGGACCAAGCTCAGATCAACCGGACAAACTCTCTCGAGAG  
790 800 810 820 830 840  
XhoI

D L N \* \*  
GATCTGAATTATTAATGATCAACCGGTATTAAGTCCAGCTCGAATTC  
850 860 870 880  
EcoRI

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Fig.6.

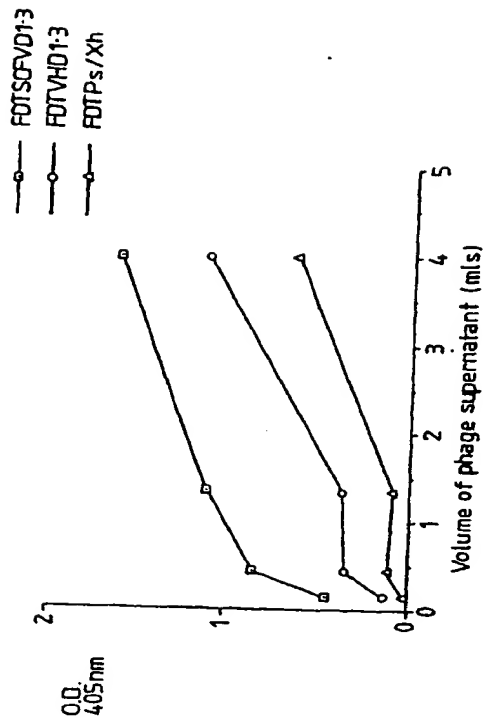
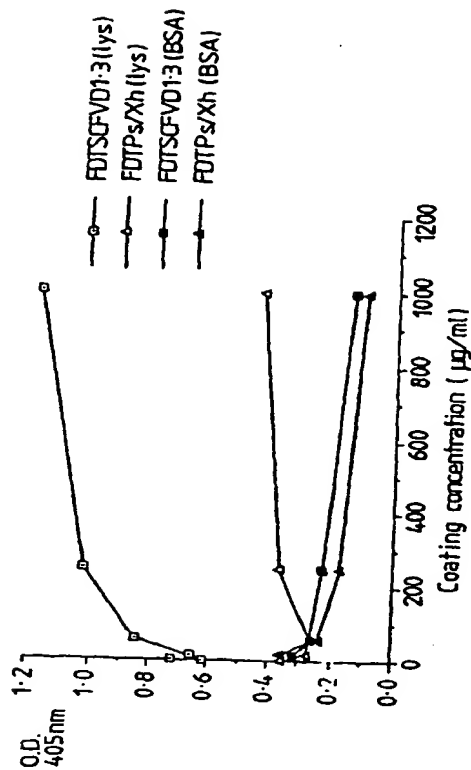


Fig.7.



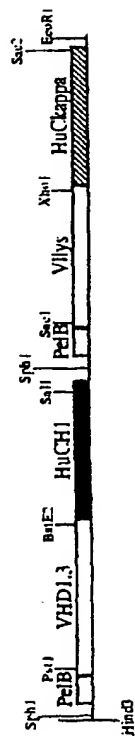
13/46

Fig.12.



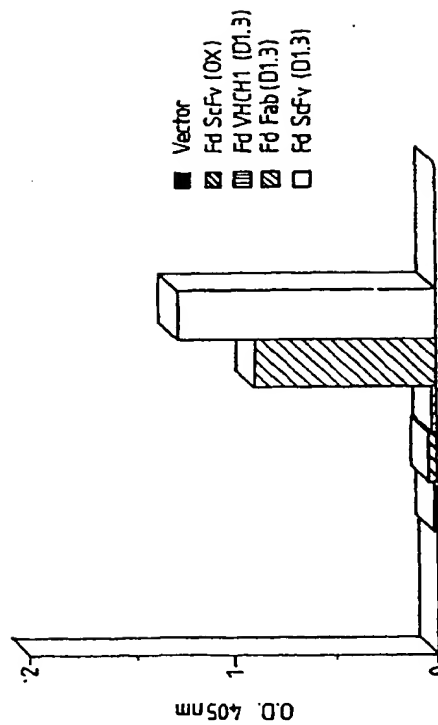
12/46

Fig.10 cont.(3)



FabD1.3 in pUC19

Fig. 11.







1646

Fig. 16(1)

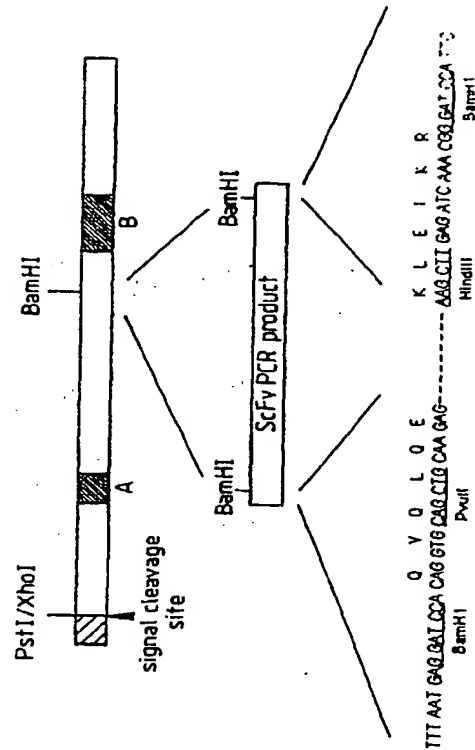


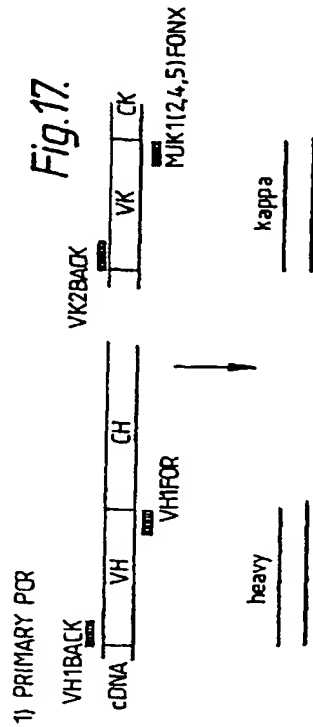
Fig. 16(2)

A	(1634) 5'	GAG GGT GGT GGC TCT		
		- - - C - -		
		- - - C - -		
		- - - C - - ACT 31839)		
B	(2264) 5'	GGC GGC GGC TGT		
		- GGT GGT GGT -		
		- - - GGC GGC -		
		GAG - - - GGC -		
		- - - GGT -		
		- - - GGC -		
		- - - GGT -		
		- - - GGC - 3' (2379)		
Reverse complement of mutagenic oligo 638BamH1				
		5'	GAG GGT GGC GGA TCC	
		3'	GAG GGT GGC GG 3'	

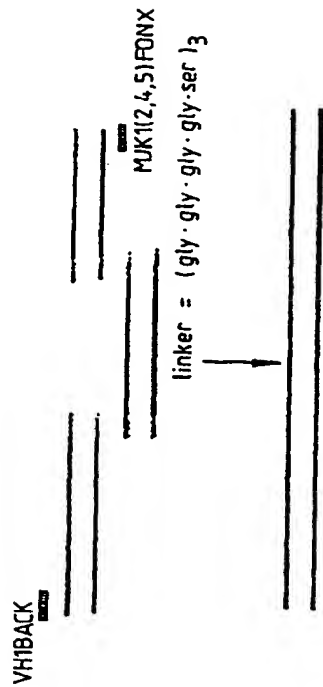
SUBSTITUTE SHEET

1746

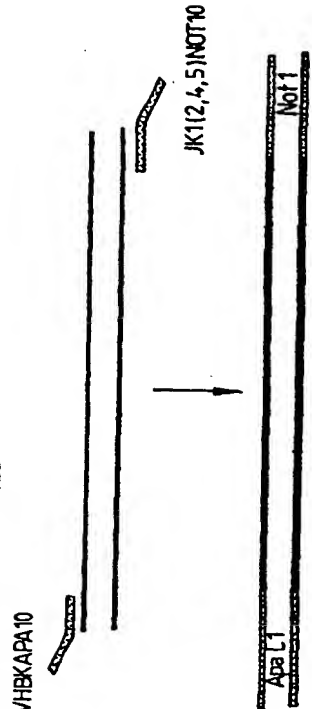
Fig. 17



2) ASSEMBLY PCR



3) ADDING RESTRICTION SITES



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Fig.18.

Fig.18.

a b c M1 M2



19/46

Fig.19.

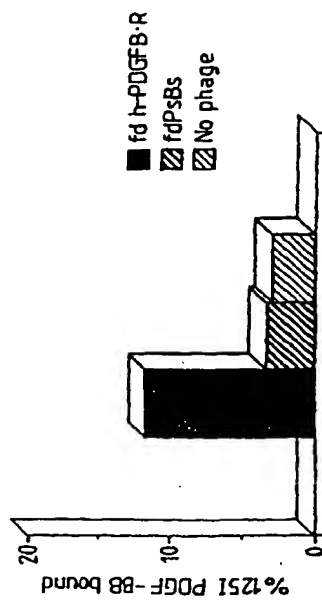
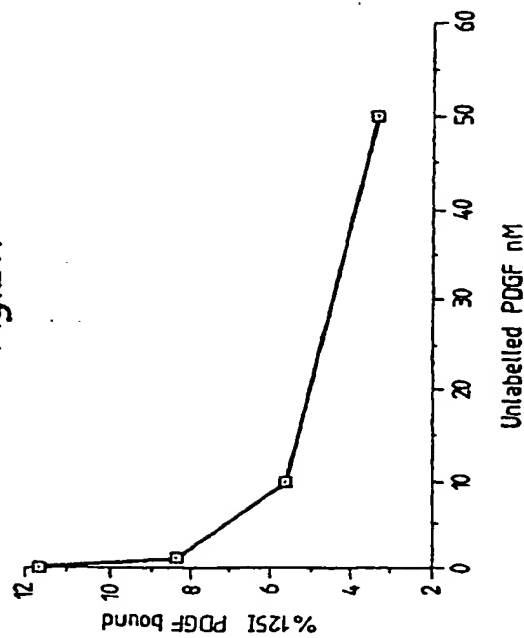


Fig.20.



20/46

2/46

Fig. 21.

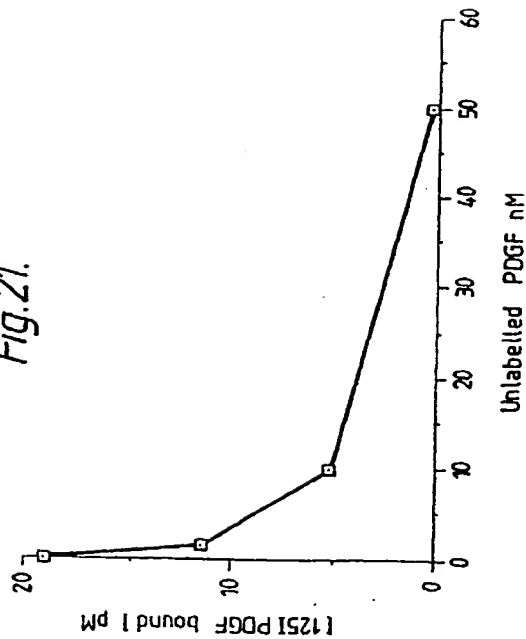


Fig. 22.

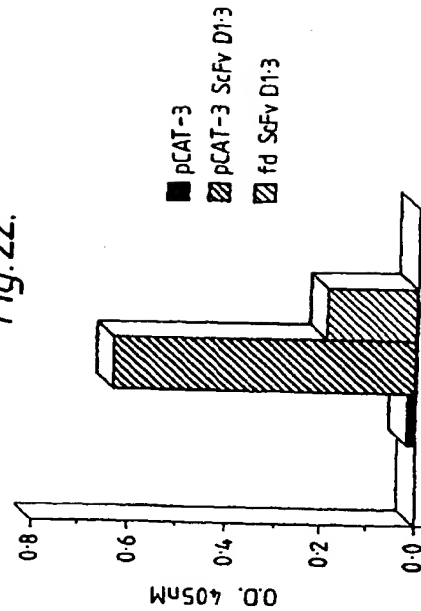
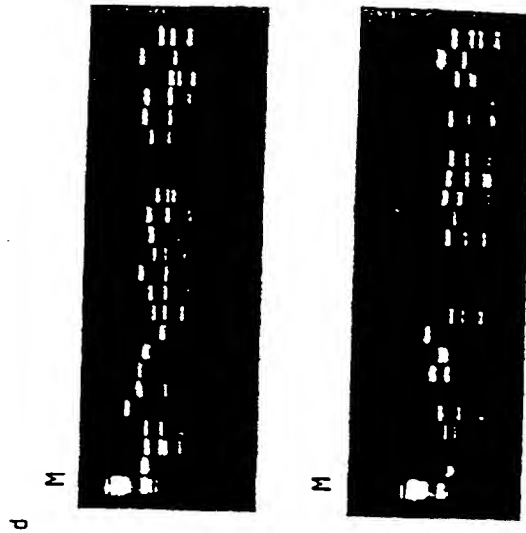


Fig. 23.





25/46

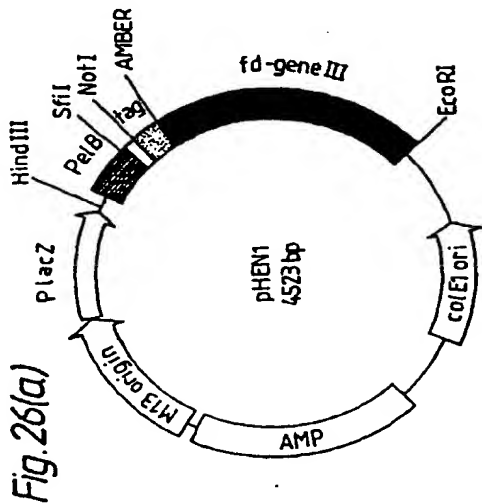
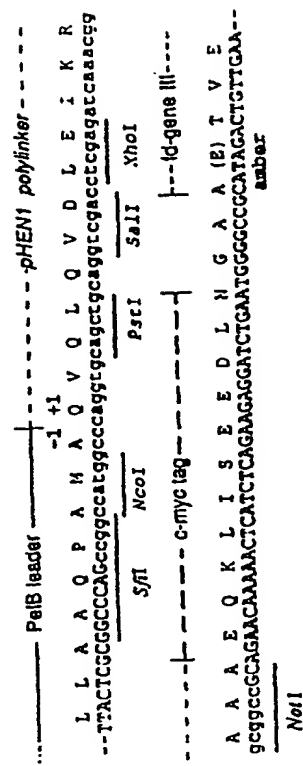


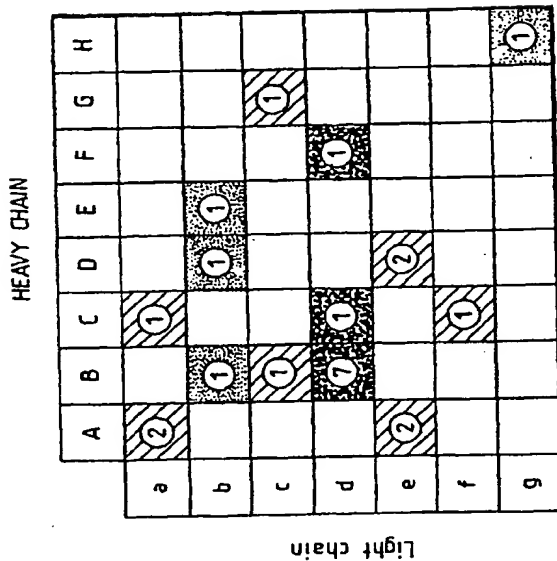
Fig. 26(b)



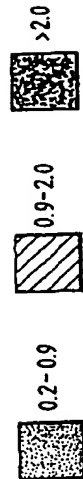
SUBSTITUTE SHEET

24/46

Fig. 25.



OD<sub>405nm</sub> in ELISA

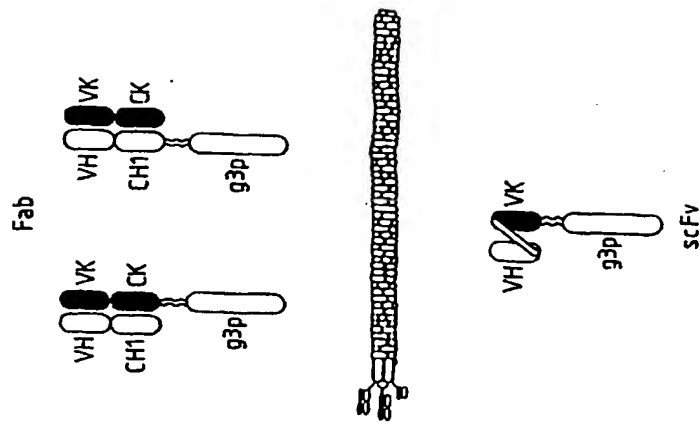


SUBSTITUTE SHEET

The diagram illustrates the construction of a Fab antibody and its subsequent assembly into a reporter construct. The process is divided into four main stages:

- Construct I:** A DNA construct containing a *Pst*I site (P), an *Apal*I/*Not*I site (L), and a *gIII* gene.
- Construct II:** The construct is assembled with scFv fragments containing *VH* and *VK* domains, forming a Fab antibody. The Fab antibody is composed of heavy chain (VH) and light chain (VK) domains, with a *pelB* tag and a *gIII* gene.
- Construct III:** The Fab antibody is assembled with heavy chain (VH) and light chain (VK) fragments, forming a full antibody. The full antibody is composed of heavy chain (VH) and light chain (VK) domains, with a *pelB* tag and a *gIII* gene.
- Construct IV:** The full antibody is assembled with a *lacZ* gene and a *pHEV1* promoter, forming a reporter construct. The reporter construct contains a *Pst*I site (P), an *Sfi*I/*Not*I site (L), an Amber stop codon, and a *gIII* gene.

Fig. 28.



28/46  
Fig.30.

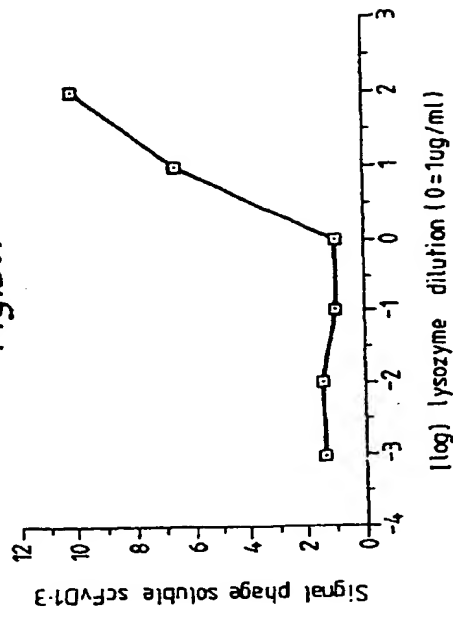


Fig.29.

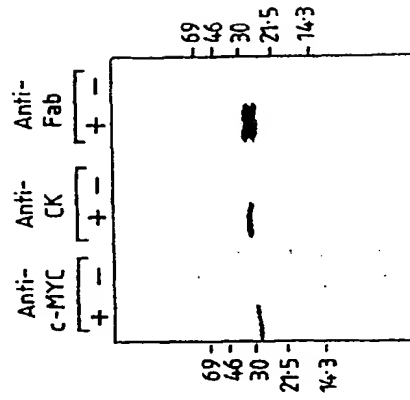
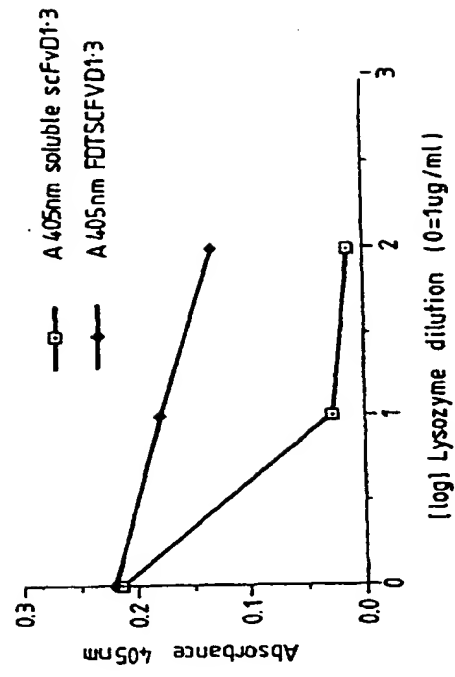


Fig.31.





30/46

Fig. 32.

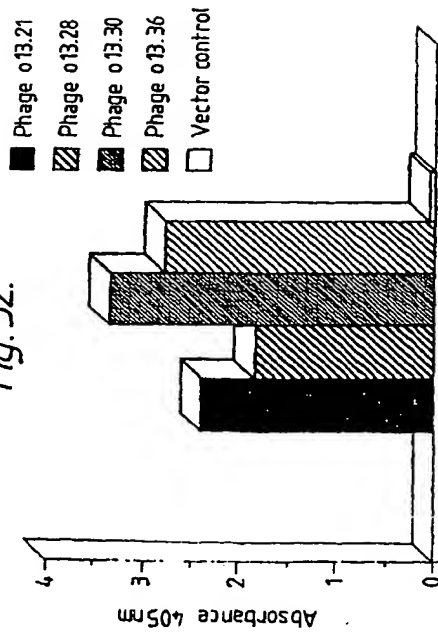
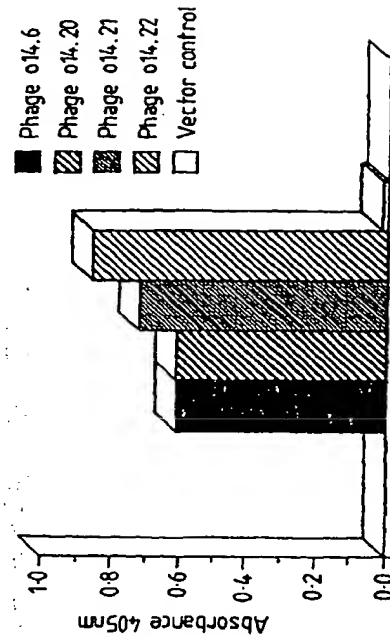
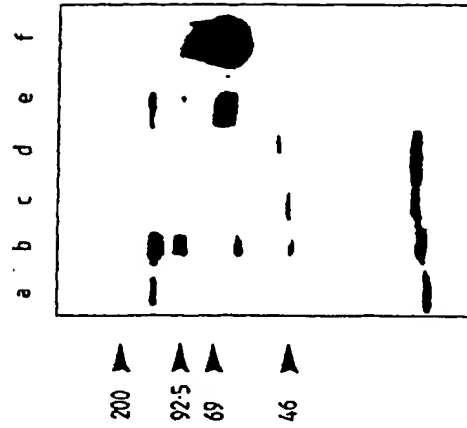


Fig. 33.



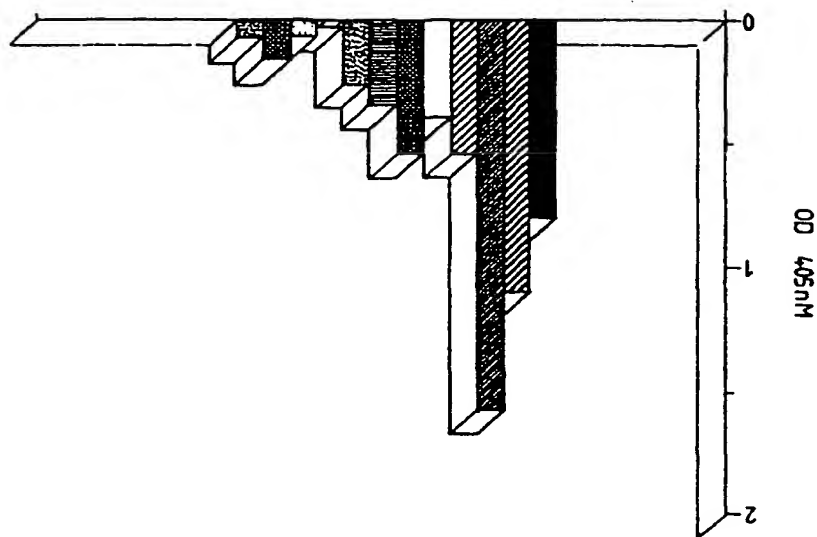
31/46

Fig. 34.



33  
46

- PCAT-3gIII No 2 0-1x
- PCAT-3gIII No 3 0-1x
- PCAT-3K07 0-1x
- fd 0-1x
- PCAT-3gIII No 2 1x
- PCAT-3gIII No 3 1x
- PCAT-3K07 1x
- fd 1x
- PCAT-3gIII No 2 10x
- PCAT-3gIII No 3 10x
- PCAT-3K07 10x
- fd 10x



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Fig. 37.

33  
46

Fig. 35.

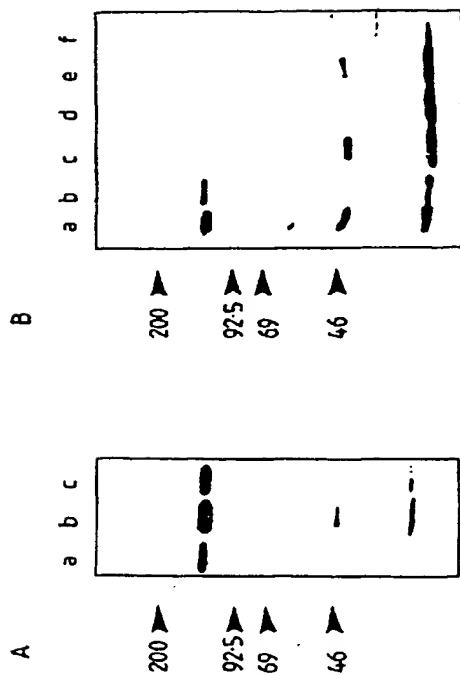
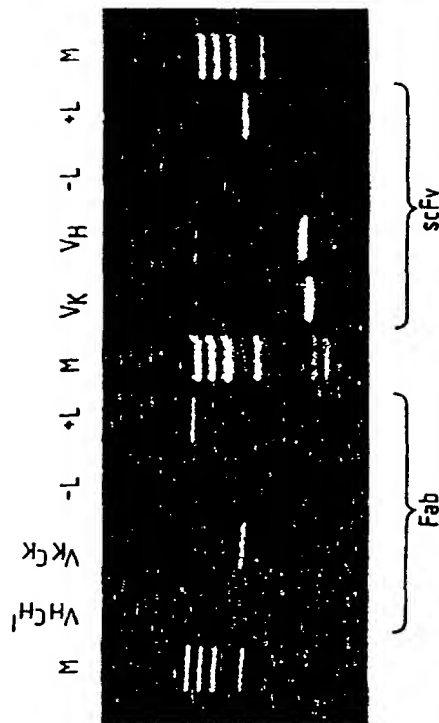


Fig. 36.



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

3446

Fig. 39.

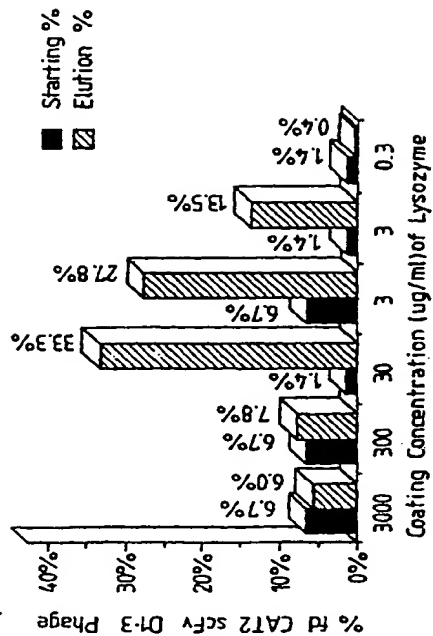


Fig. 38.

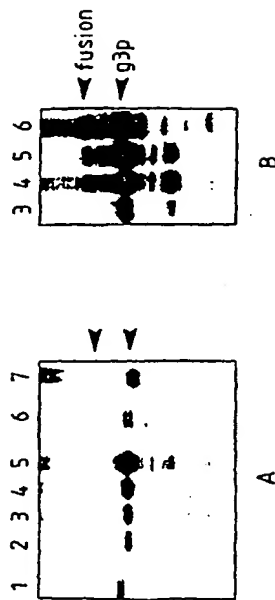
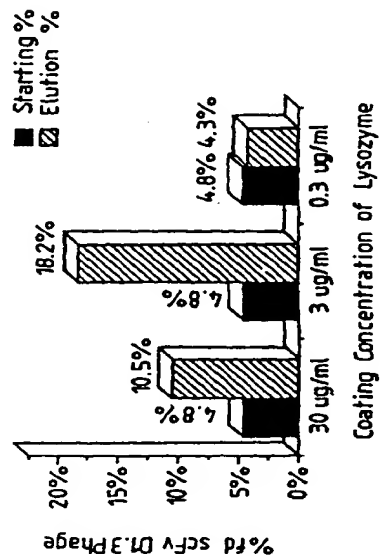


Fig. 40.



37/46

35/46

Fig. 41.

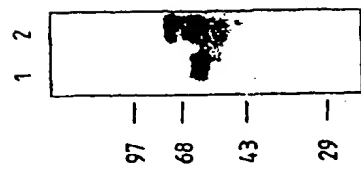


Fig. 43.

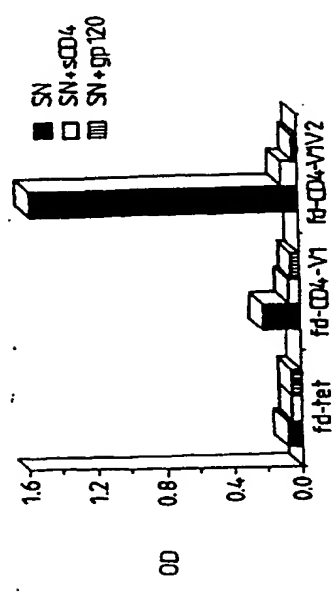
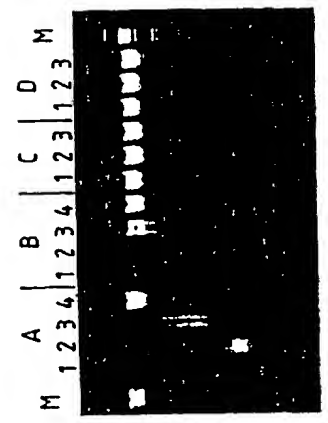


Fig. 42.





40/46

Fig. 45.

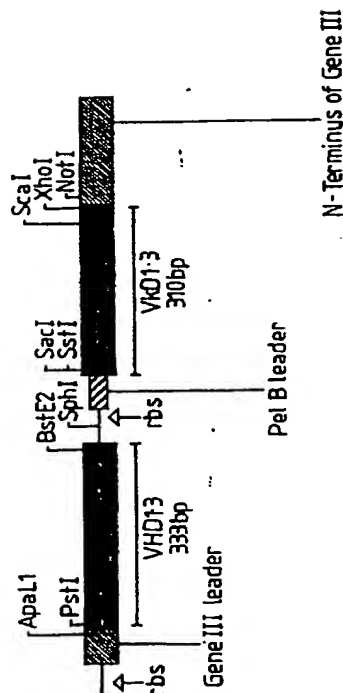
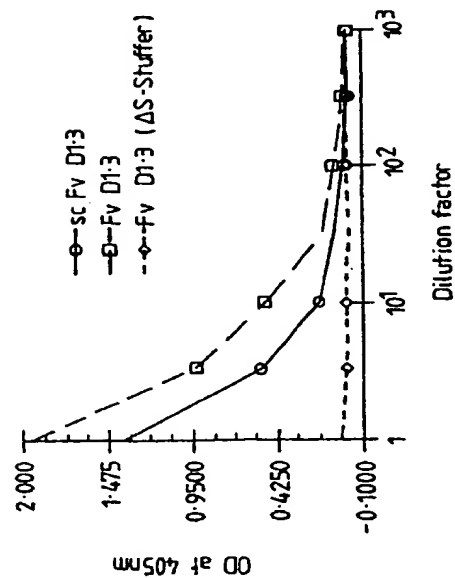
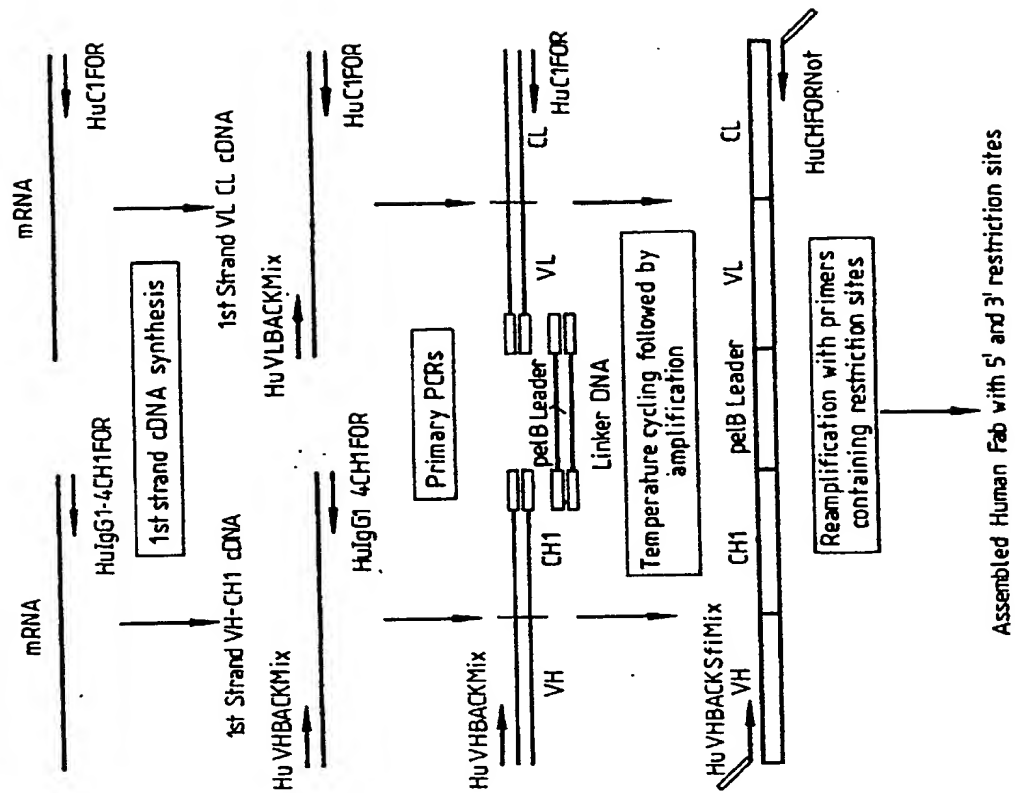


Fig. 46.



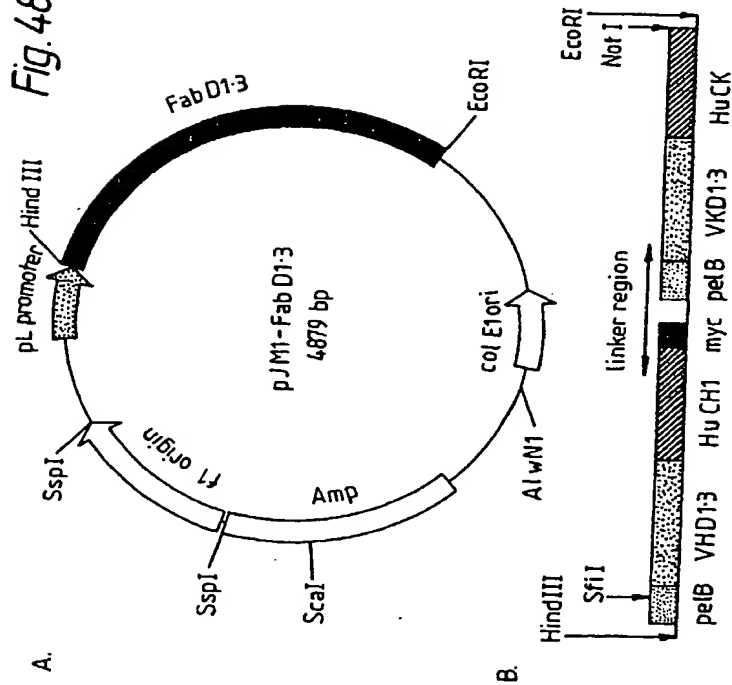
40/46

Fig. 47.

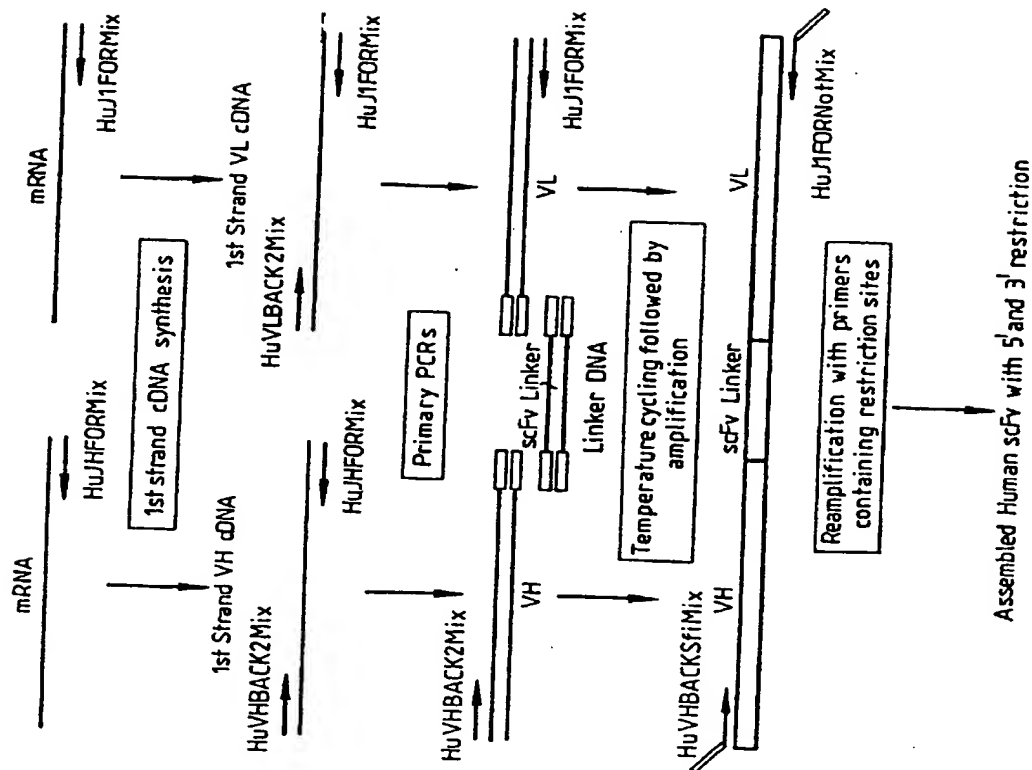


SUBSTITUTE SHEET

A.

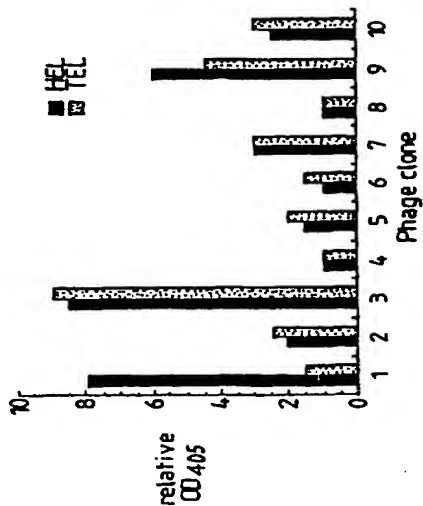
[illegible]

45/46



4346

Fig. 51.



4446

Fig. 50.

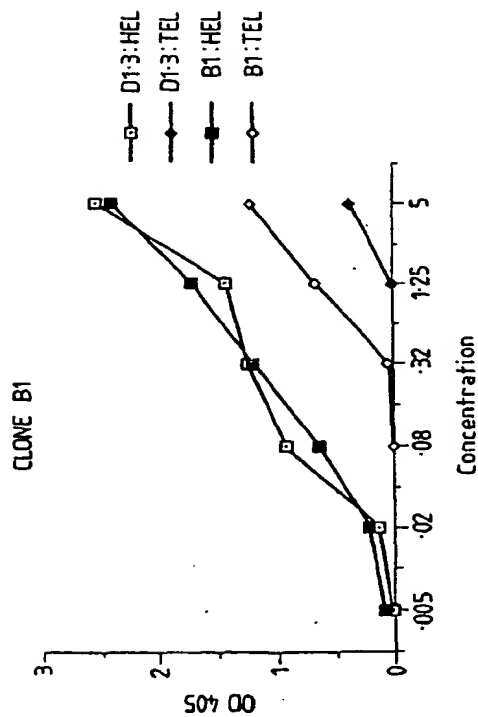
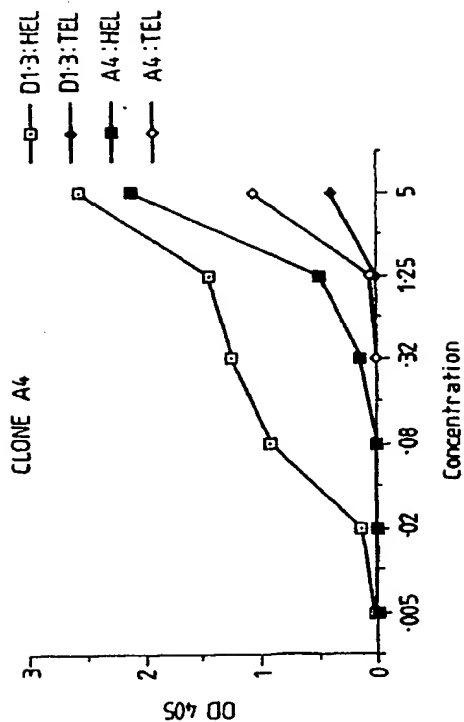
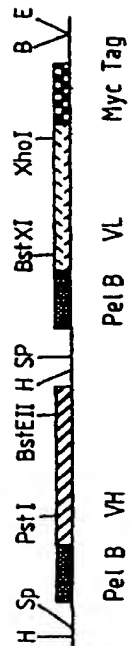


Fig. 53.





496

Fig. 52.

DI.3 DIQTPSPASLSASVGETVTITICRABGNHNYLA WYQOKQKSPOLLVYYTTTILAD  
M1P DIELTQSPSPSLASLGERVSLTCRASQDIDGSLN WLQDEPDGTIKRLIYATSBILDS  
M21 DIELTQSPALMAASFGKVTITICSVBSGIBBSNHLWYQOKSEBTPKPMIYVGTBNLAB

CDR 2

DI.3 GVPSPRFGSGSGTQYSLKINSLOPEDFGSYCYCQHFWBTPRPFGGGTKLEIKR  
M1P GVPKRFSGSRSGSDYSLTSSLSBESBDFVDYCYCQIYYABSPWTFGGGTKLEIKR  
M21 GVPVRFSGSGSGTSYSLTSSMEAEADAATYYCYCQOWBSBYPLTFGAGTKLEIKR

CDR 3

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER	
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC	
Int.C1. 5	C12N15/00 ; C07K13/00 ; G01N33/531 ; G01N33/68
II. FIELDS SEARCHED	
Mikrochimie Documentation Service	
Classification System	Classification Symbols
Int.C1. 5	C07K ; G01N ; C12N
Documentation Examined other than Mikroschematization to the extent that such Documents are included in the Fields Search	
III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT	
Category *	Character of Document, its field of invention, where appropriate, of the relevant passages
X	NUCLEIC ACIDS RESEARCH. vol. 16, no. 15, 1989, ARLINGTON, VIRGINIA US pages 7583 - 7600; SHORT, J.M. ET AL.: 'Lambda ZAP' : a bacteriophage expression vector with in vivo excision properties. See the whole document, especially Figure 1
Y	13-13,17 14-16, 18-21, 24-43
* Special categories of cited documents : "A" Document published after the International Filing Date "B" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "C" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "D" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "E" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "F" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "G" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "H" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "I" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "J" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "K" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "L" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "M" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "N" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "O" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "P" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "Q" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "R" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "S" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "T" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "U" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "V" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "W" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "X" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "Y" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application "Z" Document published before the International Filing Date but not in English with the application	
IV. CERTIFICATION	
Date of the International Search	Date of the International Search Report
16 OCTOBER 1991	04.11.91
International Searching Authority	Signature of Authorised Officer
EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE	MAUCHE S.A.

# ANNEX TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT ON INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATION NO.

GB 9101134  
SA 49532

16/10/91

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The members are listed according to the European Patent Office (EPO) file as they are known to the EPO. The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the patent passages	Relevant to Claim No.
X	SCIENCE. vol. 246, December 8, 1989, LANCASTER, PA US pages 1275 - 1281; HUSE, W.D. ET AL.: 'Generation of large combinatorial library of the Immunoglobulin repertoire in phage Lambda' see the whole document	1-4, 17, 18, 35-43
Y		5-10, 14-16, 19-21, 24-34
X	WO, A, 8 805 630 (GENEX CORPORATION; USA) September 7, 1988 see claims 1-4; figures 6, 7; example 1	11-13, 17
Y		5-10, 14-16, 18-21, 24-43
P, X	PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES OF USA. vol. 88, May 1991, WASHINGTON US pages 4363 - 4366; KANG, A.S.: 'Linkage of recognition and replication functions by assembling combinato- rial Fab libraries along phage surface.' see the whole document	1-43
P, X	WO, A, 9 014 443 (HUSE, WILLIAM; USA) November 29, 1990 see the whole document	1-43
P, X	WO, A, 9 014 424 (SCRIPPS CLINC AND RESEARCH FOUNDATION; USA) November 29, 1990 see the whole document	1-43

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family number(s)	Publication date
WO-A-8806630	07-09-88	EP-A-	0349578 10-01-90
WO-A-9014443	29-11-90	AU-A- AU-A- AU-A- EP-A- WO-A- WO-A-	5673390 18-12-90 5813890 18-12-90 5834490 18-12-90 0425661 08-05-91 9014424 29-11-90 9014430 29-11-90
WO-A-9014424	29-11-90	AU-A- AU-A- EP-A- WO-A- WO-A-	5673390 18-12-90 5813890 18-12-90 0425661 08-05-91 9014430 29-11-90 5834490 18-12-90 9014443 29-11-90

ANNEX 100000 01/91

For more details about this annex, see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/91.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

Fig. 44 (11)

[illegible]

Fig. 44 (!)

40<sub>46</sub>

Fig. 45.

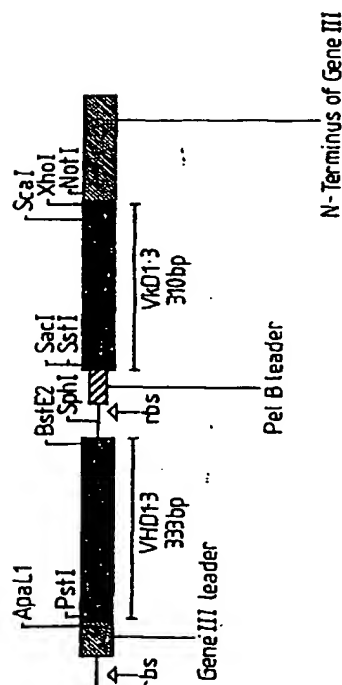
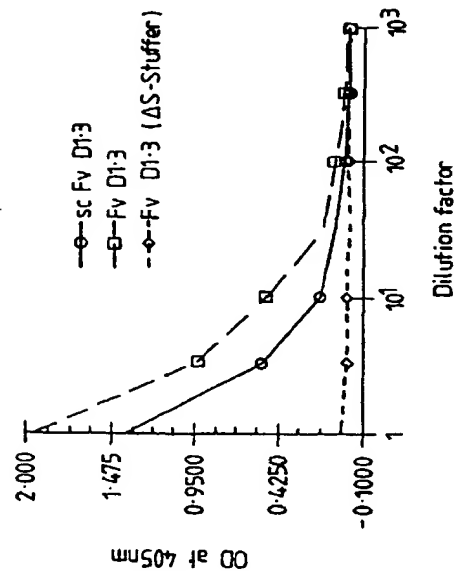
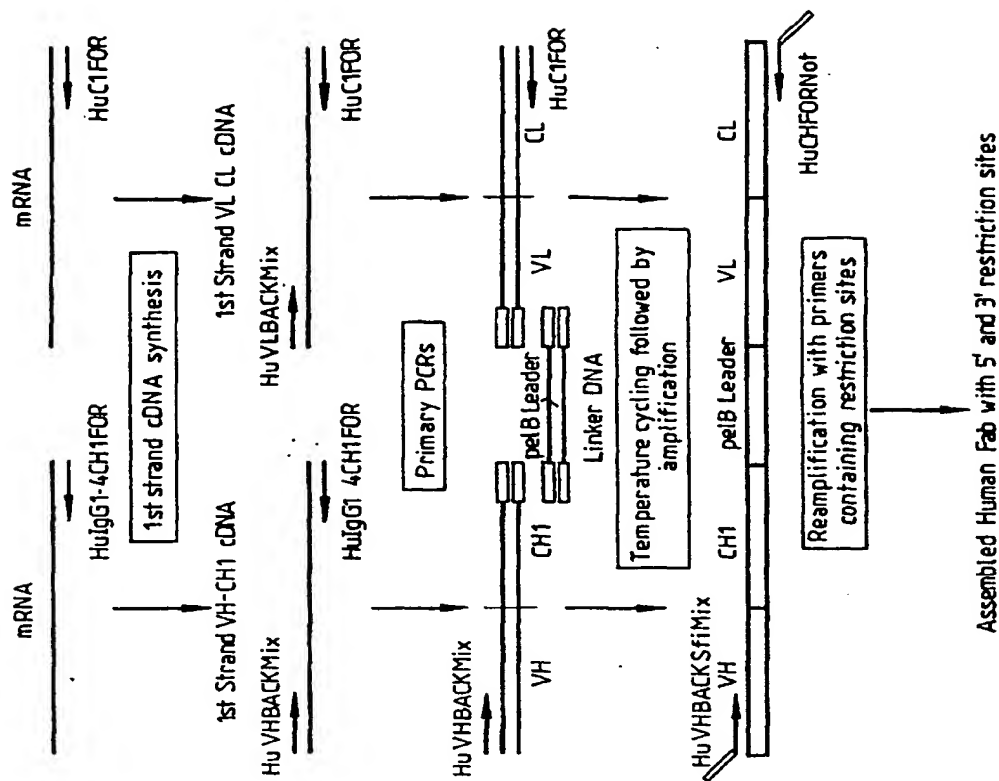


Fig. 46.



40<sub>46</sub>

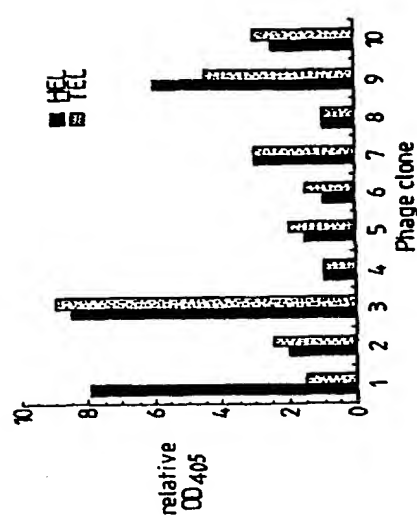
Fig. 47.





44/46

Fig. 51.



44/46

Fig. 50.

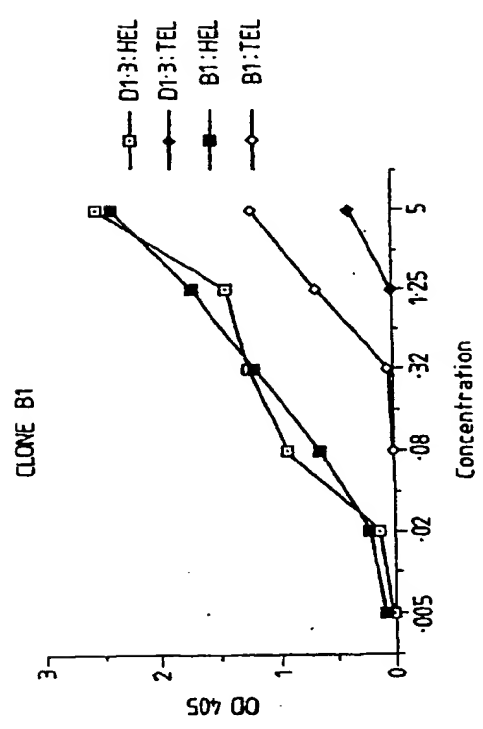


Fig. 53.

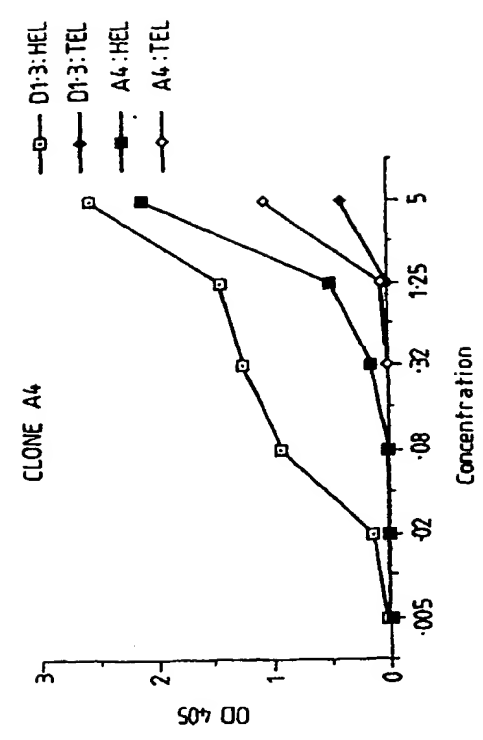
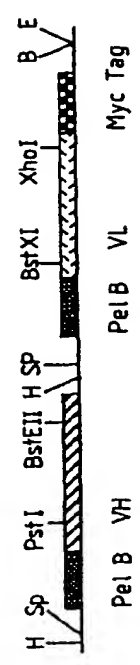


Fig. 52.

40/46

CDR 1

D1.3 DIQTPSALSASVGETVTITTCRASGNHNYLA WYQKQKSPQLLVYTTTAD  
M1P DIETQSPSSLASLGERVSLTCRASQDIGSBLN WLQEPDGTIKRLIYATBSLDB  
M2I DIETQSPALMAASPGKVTITTCSSVSSSISSNLHMYQKSETSPKPMIYGTBNLAB

CDR 3

D1.3 GVPSPFGSGSGTQYSLKINSLOPEDFGSYCYQHFWGTPRTFFGGTKLEIKR  
M1P GVPKRFSGSGSGDYSLTSSLESDFVDYCYCQWBSYPLTFGAGTKLEIKR  
M2I GVPVRFSGSGSGTSYSLTSSMEAEADAATYYCQWBSYPLTFGAGTKLEIKR

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER (If several classifications symbolize unity, indicate any) According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC	
Int.Cl. 5 C12N15/00 ; C07K13/00 ; G01N33/531 ; G01N33/68	
II. FIELDS SEARCHED	
Minimum Documentation Searched?	
Classification System	Classification Symbol
Int.Cl. 5	C07K ; G01N ; C12N
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the extent that such Document are included in the Fields Searched?	
III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT <sup>1</sup>	
Category <sup>2</sup>	Character of Document, if with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages if Relevant to Class No. 37
X	NUCLEIC ACIDS RESEARCH. vol. 16, no. 15, 1988, ARLINGTON, VIRGINIA US pages 7583 - 7600; SHORT, J.M. ET AL.: 'Lambda ZAP' : a bacteriophage expression vector with in vivo excision properties. See the whole document, especially Figure 1
Y	11-13, 17  14-16, 18-21, 24-43
IV. CITED LITERATURE	
Date of the Actual Cancellation of the International Search	Date of Mailing of the International Search Report
16 OCTOBER 1991	04.11.91
International Searching Authority	Signature of Authorised Officer
EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE	MAUCHE S.A.

ALL DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT - CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET	
Category	Classifications, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages

Entered in Class No.

1-4, 17,  
18, 35-43

SCIENCE,  
vol. 246, December 8, 1989, LANCASTER, PA US  
pages 1275 - 1281;  
HUSE, W.D. ET AL.: 'Generation of large  
combinatorial library of the immunoglobulin  
repertoire in phage Lambda'  
see the whole document

5-10,  
14-16,  
19-21,  
24-34

11-13, 17

WO.A.8.805.630 (GENEX CORPORATION, USA)  
September 7, 1988  
see claims 1-4; figures 6, 7; example 1

5-10,  
14-16,  
18-21,  
24-43

1-43

PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES  
OF USA.  
vol. 88, May 1991, WASHINGTON US  
pages 4363 - 4366;  
KANG, A.S.: 'Linkage of recognition and  
replication functions by assembling combinato-  
rial Fab libraries along phage surface.'  
see the whole document

1-43

WO.A.9.014.443 (HUSE, WILLIAM; USA) November 29,  
1990  
see the whole document

1-43

WO.A.9.014.424 (SCRIPPS CLINC AND RESEARCH  
FOUNDATION; USA) November 29, 1990  
see the whole document

ANNEX TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT  
ON INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATION NO.GB 9101134  
SA 49532

16/10/91

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report.  
The members are not cited in the European Patent Office EDP file as  
The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family number(s)	Publication date
WO-A-8806630	07-09-88	EP-A-	0349578 10-01-90
WO-A-9014443	29-11-90	AU-A- AU-A- AU-A- EP-A- WO-A- WO-A-	5673390 18-12-90 5813890 18-12-90 5834490 18-12-90 0425661 08-05-91 9014424 29-11-90 9014430 29-11-90
WO-A-9014424	29-11-90	AU-A- AU-A- EP-A- WO-A- WO-A-	5673390 18-12-90 5813890 18-12-90 0425661 08-05-91 9014430 29-11-90 5834490 18-12-90 9014443 29-11-90



**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

☐ **BLACK BORDERS**

☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**

☒ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**

☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**

☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**

☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**

☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**

☒ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**

☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**

☐ **OTHER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**